

1 Interstellar-Terrestrial Relations:  
2 Variable Cosmic Environments, the Dynamic Heliosphere,  
3 and Their Imprints on Terrestrial Archives and Climate

4 K. Scherer ([kls@tp4.rub.de](mailto:kls@tp4.rub.de)), H. Fichtner ([hf@tp4.rub.de](mailto:hf@tp4.rub.de)) and T.  
5 Borrmann ([tb@tp4.rub.de](mailto:tb@tp4.rub.de))  
6 *Institut für theoretische Physik, Weltraum- und Astrophysik, Ruhr-Universität*  
7 *Bochum, D-44780 Bochum, Germany*

8 J. Beer ([juerg.beer@eawag.ch](mailto:juerg.beer@eawag.ch))  
9 *Eidgenössische Anstalt für Wasserversorgung, Abwasserreinigung und*  
10 *Gewässerschutz, 133 Dübendorf, CH-8600, Switzerland*

11 L. Desorgher ([laurent.desorgher@phim.unibe.ch](mailto:laurent.desorgher@phim.unibe.ch)) and E. Flückiger  
12 ([erwin.flueckiger@phim.unibe.ch](mailto:erwin.flueckiger@phim.unibe.ch))  
13 *Physikalisches Institut, Abteilung für Weltraumforschung und Planetologie,*  
14 *Sidlerstr. 5, CH-3012 Bern, Switzerland*

15 H.-J. Fahr ([hfahr@astro.uni-bonn.de](mailto:hfahr@astro.uni-bonn.de))  
16 *Institut für Astrophysik und extraterrestrische Forschung der Universität Bonn,*  
17 *Auf dem Hügel 71, 53121 Bonn, Germany*

18 S.E.S. Ferreira ([fsksesf@puknet.puk.ac.za](mailto:fsksesf@puknet.puk.ac.za)), U.W. Langner  
19 ([fskuwl@puknet.puk.ac.za](mailto:fskuwl@puknet.puk.ac.za)) and M.S. Potgieter  
20 ([fskmsp@puknet.puk.ac.za](mailto:fskmsp@puknet.puk.ac.za))  
21 *Unit for Space Physics, School of Physics, North-West University, 2520*  
22 *Potchefstroom, South Africa*

23 B. Heber ([heber@physik.uni-kiel.de](mailto:heber@physik.uni-kiel.de))  
24 *Institut für Experimentelle und Angewandte Physik, Leibnizstraße 19, 24098 Kiel,*  
25 *Germany*

26 J. Masarik ([masarik@fmph.uniba.sk](mailto:masarik@fmph.uniba.sk))  
27 *Comenius University, Department of Nuclear Physics & Bio Physics, 84248*  
28 *Bratislava 4, Slovakia*

29 N. Shaviv ([shaviv@phys.huji.ac.il](mailto:shaviv@phys.huji.ac.il))  
30 *Hebrew University Jerusalem, 91904 Israel*

31 J. Veizer ([veizer@science.uottawa.ca](mailto:veizer@science.uottawa.ca))  
32 *Ottawa-Carleton Geoscience Center, University of Ottawa, 140 Louis Pasteur,*  
33 *Ottawa, Canada K1N 6N5*

34 **Abstract.** In recent years the variability of the cosmic ray flux has become one of  
35 the main issues interpreting cosmogenic elements and additionally their connection  
36 with climate. In this review, an interdisciplinary team of scientist brings together  
37 our knowledge of the evolution and modulation of the cosmic ray flux from its origin  
38 in the Milky Way, during its propagation through the heliosphere, in its interaction  
39 with the Earth's magnetosphere, resulting, finally, in the production of cosmogenic



© 2006 Kluwer Academic Publishers. Printed in the Netherlands.

40 isotopes in the Earth' atmosphere. The interpretation of the cosmogenic isotopes  
 41 and the cosmic ray – cloud connection are also shortly discussed. Finally, we discuss  
 42 some open questions.

43 **Keywords:** Cosmic Rays – Heliosphere – Cosmogenic Isotopes – Climate

44 **Table of Contents**

45	<b>I</b>	<b>Introduction to the Problem</b>	<b>7</b>
46	1	Interstellar-Terrestrial Relations: Definition and Evidence	9
47	2	Cosmic Ray Forcing	10
48	3	Known Astronomical Effects	11
49	4	Structure of the Review	13
50	<b>II</b>	<b>General Theoretical Concepts</b>	<b>15</b>
51	5	The Fundaments for the Quantitative Modelling	17
52	5.1	Cosmic Ray Transport	17
53	5.2	The Dynamical Heliosphere	18
54	<b>III</b>	<b>Galactic Cosmic Rays</b>	<b>21</b>
55	6	Long-term Variation	23
56	6.1	Star Formation Rate	23
57	6.2	Spiral Arm Passages	25
58	6.3	Cosmic Ray Record in Iron Meteorites	29
59	7	Cosmic Ray Spectra inside and outside of Galactic Arms	32
60	7.1	Accelerations at Shocks	32
61	7.2	Self-similar Blast Waves	34
62	7.3	Galactic Cosmic Ray Spectra	35
63	7.4	The Average GCR Spectrum inside Galactic Arms	38
64	7.5	Escape into the Interarm Region	40
65	<b>IV</b>	<b>Heliospheric Modulation</b>	<b>45</b>
66	8	Propagation of Cosmic Rays inside the Heliosphere	47
67	8.1	Solar Activity: 11-year and 22-year Cycles in Cos-	
68		mic Rays	47
69	8.2	Causes of the 11- and 22-year Modulation Cycles	50
70	9	Effects of the Heliospheric Structure and the Heliopause	
71		on the Intensities of Cosmic Rays at Earth	55
72	9.1	Modulation Models	57

73	9.2	Changes in the Shape of the Heliosphere	57
74	9.3	Changes in the Size of the Heliosheath	58
75	9.4	Changes in the Termination Shock Compression	
76		Ratio	58
77	9.5	Modulation in the Heliosheath	61
78	9.6	Changes in the Local Interstellar Spectrum	61
79	<b>V</b>	<b>Effects of the Dynamical Heliosphere</b>	<b>67</b>
80	10	3D (Magneto-)Hydrodynamic Modelling	69
81	10.1	3D Models without Cosmic Rays	69
82	10.2	3D Models with Cosmic Rays	69
83	11	Cosmic Ray Transport in a Dynamic Heliosphere	78
84	11.1	Cosmic Ray Transport	78
85	11.2	Transport Coefficients and the Compound Ap-	
86		proach	79
87	11.3	Results of the Hybrid Model	82
88	<b>VI</b>	<b>Magnetospheric and Atmospheric Effects</b>	<b>87</b>
89	12	Shielding by the Earth's Magnetosphere and Atmosphere	89
90	12.1	Cosmic Ray Propagation in the Earth's Magnetic	
91		Field	89
92	12.2	Cosmic Ray Interaction in the Atmosphere	94
93	13	Cosmic Ray Flux and Cosmogenic Isotopes	101
94	13.1	Calculation of Cosmogenic Nuclide Production	
95		Rates	104
96	13.2	Geometrical and Chemical Model of the Earth	104
97	13.3	Cosmic Ray Particle Fluxes and Cosmogenic Nu-	
98		clide Production	105
99	13.4	The Geomagnetic Field and Cosmogenic Nuclide	
100		Production	106
101	13.5	Cross Sections for Cosmogenic Nuclide Production	109
102	<b>VII</b>	<b>Cosmic Ray Imprints in Terrestrial Archives and</b>	
103		<b>Their Implications to Climate</b>	<b>111</b>
104	14	Imprints in Earth's archives	113
105	15	Implications to Climate	116
106	15.1	Celestial Climate Drivers and Amplifiers	118
107	15.2	Terrestrial Archives	121
108	15.3	Paleoclimate on Billion Year Time Scales	122
109	15.4	Paleoclimate on Million Year Time Scales	124

110	15.5	Paleoclimate on Multimillennial Time Scales	125
111	15.6	Postglacial Climate on Millennial to Centennial	
112		Time Scales	130
113	15.7	Post Little Ice Age Climate on Decadal Time Scales	133
114	<b>VIII</b>	<b>Resume</b>	<b>137</b>
115	16	Where do we stand?	139

### List of Abbreviations

116	accelerator mass-spectrometry (AMS)
117	anomalous cosmic ray (ACR)
118	
119	before present (BP)
120	
121	coronal mass ejections (CMEs)
122	cosmic ray (CR)
123	cosmic ray flux (CRF)
124	
125	Energetic storm particles (ESP)
126	
127	galactic cosmic ray (GCR)
128	general circulation model (GCM)
129	global merged interaction region (GMIR)
130	greenhouse gases (GHG)
131	Ground Level Enhancement (GLE)
132	
133	heliospheric magnetic field (HMF)
134	
135	interaction region (CIR)
136	International Geomagnetic Reference Field (IGRF)
137	International Geophysical Year (IGY)
138	
139	Large Magellanic Cloud (LMC)
140	Little Ice Age (LIA)
141	local interstellar spectrum (LIS)
142	
143	magneto-hydrodynamic (MHD)
144	Medieval Climate Optimum (MCO)
145	Milky Way (MW)
146	
147	neutron monitor (NM)
148	
149	pickup ion (PUI)
150	propagating diffusion barrier (PDB)
151	
152	solar energetic particle (SEP)
153	Star Formation Rate (SFR)
154	supernova (SN)
155	
156	termination shock (TS)
157	Total Solar Irradiance (TSI)



158

## Part I

159

# Introduction to the Problem

160





161 **1. Interstellar-Terrestrial Relations: Definition and Evidence**

162 There is evidence that the galactic environment of the Solar System  
163 leaves traces on Earth. Well-known are supernova explosions, which  
164 are responsible for an increased  $^3\text{He}$  abundance in marine sediments  
165 (O'Brien et al., 1991), or catastrophic cometary impacts, which are  
166 considered as causes for biological mass extinctions (Rampino et al.,  
167 1997; Rampino, 1998). These and other events, to which also gamma  
168 ray bursts (Thorsett, 1995) or close stellar encounters (Scherer, 2000)  
169 can be counted, can be considered as 'quasi-singular' and belong to  
170 so-called *stellar-terrestrial relations*. From those one should distinguish  
171 'quasi-periodic' events, which are connected to encounters of differ-  
172 ent interstellar gas phases or molecular clouds (Frisch, 2000), to the  
173 crossing of the galactic plane (Schwartz and James, 1984), and to the  
174 passage through galactic spiral arms (Leitch and Vasisht, 1998). As will  
175 be explained in the following, these quasi-periodic changes influence  
176 the Earth and its environment and are, therefore, called *interstellar-*  
177 *terrestrial relations*. The mediators of such environmental changes are  
178 the interstellar plasma and neutral gas as well as the cosmic rays, all  
179 of which affect the structure and dynamics of the heliosphere. The  
180 heliosphere, however, acts as a shield protecting the Earth from the  
181 direct contact with the harsh interstellar environment. From all particle  
182 populations that can penetrate this shield, only the flux variations of  
183 cosmic rays can be read off terrestrial archives, namely the depositories  
184 of cosmogenic isotopes, i.e. ice-cores, sediments, or meteorites.

185 The typical periods of interstellar-terrestrial relations seen in these  
186 archives are determined by external (interstellar) triggers on time-scales  
187 longer than about ten-thousand years, while those for shorter time-  
188 scales are governed by an internal (solar) trigger. The latter results  
189 from solar activity, which leads to variations of the cosmic ray flux  
190 with periods of the various solar cycles, like the Hale-, Schwabe- and  
191 Gleissberg-cycle amongst others.

192 The *interpretation* of the cosmogenic archives is of importance for  
193 our understanding of variations of the galactic cosmic ray spectra and  
194 of the solar dynamo and, therefore, of high interest to astrophysics.  
195 Moreover, the *correlation* of cosmogenic with climate archives gives  
196 valuable information regarding the question to what extent the Earth  
197 climate is driven by extraterrestrial forces. Candidates for such climate  
198 drivers are the variable Sun (solar forcing), the planetary perturbations  
199 (Milankovitch forcing), the variable cosmic ray flux (cosmic ray forc-  
200 ing), and the varying atomic hydrogen inflow into the atmosphere of  
201 Earth (hydrogen forcing).

202 The current debate concentrates on solar and cosmic ray forcing,  
203 because the Milankovitch forcing is well understood and the hydro-  
204 gen forcing is highly speculative. While there exists a vast amount  
205 of literature, especially reviews and monographs, concerning the solar  
206 forcing, the work on cosmic ray forcing is still largely scattered and no  
207 comprehensive overview has been compiled so far. This review intends  
208 to make the first step to change that situation by bringing together  
209 our knowledge about cosmogenic archives, climate archives, cosmic ray  
210 transport and heliospheric dynamics.

## 211 2. Cosmic Ray Forcing

212 The idea that cosmic rays can influence the climate on Earth dates  
213 back to Ney (1959) who pointed out that if climate is sensitive to the  
214 amount of tropospheric ionization, it would also be sensitive to solar  
215 activity since the solar wind modulates the cosmic ray flux (CRF), and  
216 with it, the amount of tropospheric ionization. These principal consid-  
217 erations have been revived by Svensmark and Friis-Christensen (1997)  
218 and Svensmark (1998), who found from a study of satellite and neutron  
219 monitor data a correlation between cosmic ray intensity and the global  
220 cloud coverage on the 11-year time-scale of the solar activity cycle.  
221 While Marsh and Svensmark (2000a), Marsh and Svensmark (2000b),  
222 Palle Bago and Butler (2000) have significantly refined this correlation  
223 analysis. Usoskin et al. (2004b) have found that the CRF/low altitude  
224 cloud cover is as predicted. Namely, the amount of cloud cover change  
225 over the solar cycle at different latitudes is proportional to the change in  
226 tropospheric ionization averaged over the particular latitudes. Others  
227 have started to identify the physical processes for cloud formation due  
228 to high-energy charged particles in the atmosphere (Tinsley and Deen,  
229 1991; Tinsley and Heelis, 1993; Eichkorn et al., 2002; Yu, 2002; Harrison  
230 and Stephenson, 2006). There is, however, also severe doubt regarding  
231 the significance of the correlation, see, e.g. Gierens and Ponater (1999),  
232 Kernthaler et al. (1999), Carslaw et al. (2002), Sun and Bradley (2002),  
233 Kristjánsson et al. (2004), Sun and Bradley (2004).

234 The critics rather favour the most evident external climate driver,  
235 namely the solar irradiance. While on the 11-year time-scale (Schwabe  
236 cycle) both the cosmic ray forcing and the solar forcing act in an in-  
237 distinguishable manner, on the 22-year time-scale (Hale cycle), there  
238 should be a difference because, in contrast to the solar irradiation, the  
239 cosmic ray flux is sensitive to the heliospheric magnetic field polarity  
240 as a consequence of drift-related propagation (Fichtner et al., 2006).

241 Other clues result from the study of the climate and cosmogenic  
242 archives for intermediate and very long time-scales. Regarding the for-  
243 mer, the so-called grand minima of solar activity have been investi-  
244 gated (van Geel et al., 1999a; Caballero-Lopez et al., 2004; Scherer  
245 and Fichtner, 2004) because temperature was generally lower during  
246 these periods (Grove, 1988). There is evidence from historical sunspot  
247 observations and cosmogenic archives that both forcing processes could  
248 have been responsible for this climate variation so that, unfortunately,  
249 no decision can be expected unless the 22-year Hale cycle is detected in  
250 the data, a claim that has been made already (Miyahara et al., 2005).

251 The situation is different on very long time-scales. Opposite to the  
252 shorter time-scales, on which the cosmic ray flux variations are domi-  
253 nated by solar activity, on longer time scales they are influenced by pro-  
254 cesses external to the heliosphere, like interstellar environment changes  
255 (Yabushita and Allen, 1998) or spiral arm crossings (Shaviv, 2003a).  
256 So, one should expect corresponding climate variations on time-scales  
257 of millions of years. Indeed, Shaviv and Veizer (2003) have found a  
258 correlation between the cosmic ray flux and Earth temperature for the  
259 last 500 million years that can be related to the spiral arm crossings  
260 of the heliosphere occurring with a quasi-period of about 135 million  
261 years. Because there is no reason to expect that solar activity and, in  
262 turn, solar irradiance is triggered by spiral arm crossings or interstel-  
263 lar environment changes, any cosmic ray climate correlation on such  
264 time-scales is a strong argument in favour of cosmic ray forcing.

### 265 3. Known Astronomical Effects

266 Quite early the influence of interstellar clouds on the climate on Earth  
267 has been discussed (Shapley, 1921; Hoyle and Lyttleton, 1939; McCrea,  
268 1975; Eddy, 1976; Dennison and Mansfield, 1976; Begelman and Rees,  
269 1976; McKay and Thomas, 1978) and revisited by Yeghikyan and Fahr,  
270 Yeghikyan and Fahr (2004b, 2004a). A possible influence of interstellar  
271 dust particles on the climate was discussed in Hoyle (1984). A review of  
272 the possible long-term fluctuations of the Earth environment and their  
273 possible astronomical causes was given by McCrea (1981). The influence  
274 of a neutral interstellar particle fluxes on the terrestrial environment  
275 was studied by Bzowski et al. (1996)

276 In the middle of the last century (Milankovitch, 1941) discussed the  
277 planetary influence on terrestrial climate, especially on the ice ages.  
278 The secular variations of the Earth's orbital elements caused by the  
279 other planets, lead to periodically changes in the inclination and eccen-  
280 tricity (with the most significant periods of: 19, 23, 41, 100 400 kyr),

281 which in turn affects the absorption of solar irradiation (the latitudinal  
 282 dependence), insolation, the length of the seasons, etc. causing climatic  
 283 changes, e.g. Berger (1991), Ruddiman (2006). These and other periods  
 can be found in Figure 1 taken from Mitchell (1976). Concentrating on

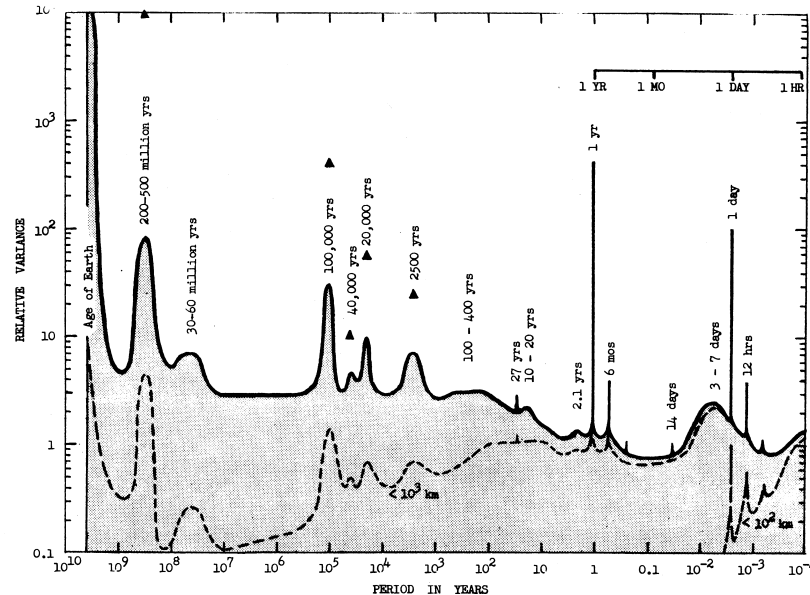


Figure 1. Compilation of the climatic changes on Earth on all times scales (after Mitchell 1976).

284 variations longer than one year in Figure 1 the different periods can be  
 285 identified in the following ways: While the Milankovitch cycle is more or  
 286 less confirmed, all periods for the external forcing of the climate listed  
 287 above are still under debate. Recently, Lassen and Friis-Christensen  
 288 (1995) pointed to the connection of the solar cycle length and the tem-  
 289 perature variation in the northern hemisphere. These external effects  
 290 have the major drawback, that up to now no detailed process is known  
 291 which drives the related climate changes. The 2400-year period is prob-  
 292 ably connected with the relative motion of the Sun around the center  
 293 of mass (barycentre) of the solar system (Charvatova, 1990). The 30-  
 294 Myr peak coincides with the galactic plane crossing of the heliosphere,  
 295 and the (220-500)-Myr peak corresponds to the revolution period of  
 296 the Sun around the galaxy (see section 6). In table I, some alternative  
 297 explanations are listed, too.

299 Other astronomical effects of sporadic nature are, for example, su-  
 300 pernovae explosions (Ruderman, 1974), gamma-ray bursts (Thorsett,  
 301 1995), and stellar encounters (Scherer, 2000) and will not be discussed  
 302 further.

Table I. Possible astronomical or geological explanations of the different periods observed in Figure 1.

Years	Explanation	
	Astronomical	Geological
10–20	solar cycle variations	
100–400	long term solar variations	
2400	motion of Sun around solar system barycentre	deep-sea thermohaline circulations
19000, 23000	precession parameter (Milankovitch cycle)	
41000	obliquity (Milankovitch cycle)	
100000	eccentricity (Milankovitch cycle)	
$(30–60) \times 10^6$	galactic plane crossing	tectonism
$(200–500) \times 10^6$	orbital revolution of the Sun around galactic center	tectonism

303

#### 4. Structure of the Review

304 The general physical ideas for cosmic ray acceleration and modulation  
 305 together with magneto-hydrodynamic (MHD) concepts are briefly  
 306 presented in part II.

307 In part III the problem of determining the local interstellar cosmic  
 308 ray spectra is considered. This is done in two sections: First, in section 6  
 309 the distribution of matter and stars in the galaxy along the orbit of the  
 310 Sun and their influences on the cosmic ray flux is discussed (N. Shaviv).  
 311 Second, in section 7 the galactic cosmic ray spectra inside and outside of  
 312 galactic spiral arms are computed (H.-J. Fahr, H. Fichtner, K. Scherer).

313 The heliospheric modulation of present-day interstellar spectra due  
 314 to the solar activity cycle is subject of part IV. While in section 8 the  
 315 time dependence of the modulation processes are described for the 11-  
 316 and 22-year solar cycles (M.S. Potgieter), section 9 concentrates on the  
 317 spatial aspect of the modulation, in particular its dependence on the  
 318 outer heliospheric structure (U.W. Langner, M.S. Potgieter).

319 For the considerations in part III and IV a stationary heliosphere  
 320 was assumed. This approximation is dropped in part V. A general de-  
 321 scription of hydrodynamic modeling of heliospheric plasma structures  
 322 given in section 10 (H. Fichtner, T. Borrman) is followed by section 11

323 with a presentation of results of hybrid modeling, including the kinetic  
324 transport equation of cosmic rays (S.E.S. Ferreira, K. Scherer).

325 The interaction of cosmic rays with the environment of the Earth  
326 is studied in part VI. After discussing the magnetospheric and at-  
327 mospheric propagation of cosmic rays as well as the corresponding  
328 ionization and energy deposition in the atmosphere in section 12 (B.  
329 Heber, L. Desorgher, E. Flückiger), the production of cosmogenic nuclei  
330 is described in section 13 (J. Masarik, J. Beer).

331 The imprints of cosmic rays on Earth and their implications for  
332 climate processes are subject of part VII. The emphasis in section 14  
333 is put on the storage of cosmogenic isotopes in various archives (K.  
334 Scherer, J. Beer), while in section 15 the evidence of cosmic ray driven  
335 climate effects on different time scales is presented (J. Veizer).

336 In the final part VIII an attempt is made to identify and formulate  
337 the crucial questions in this new interdisciplinary field.

338

## Part II

339

# General Theoretical Concepts

340





341 **5. The Fundamentals for the Quantitative Modelling**

342 The fundamental equations for quantitative studies are presented in the  
 343 following two sections. The transport equation of cosmic rays discussed  
 344 in the section 5.1 is used to describe the acceleration and propagation  
 345 of cosmic rays through the galaxy as well as through the heliosphere.  
 346 For the latter plasma structure the magneto-hydrodynamic (MHD)  
 347 equations are presented in section 5.2 with their general assumptions.

348 **5.1. COSMIC RAY TRANSPORT**

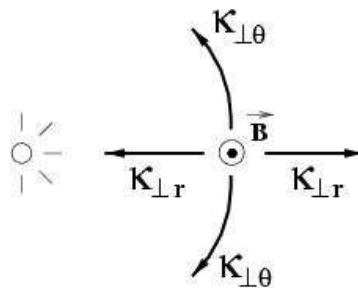
349 The transport of cosmic rays is calculated by solving the transport  
 350 equation (Parker, 1965)

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot (\overleftrightarrow{\kappa} \nabla f) - (\vec{v} + \vec{v}_{dr}) \cdot \nabla f + \frac{p}{3} (\nabla \cdot \vec{v}) \frac{\partial f}{\partial p} + S(\vec{r}, \vec{p}, t) \quad (1)$$

351 The description is based on the isotropic phase space distribution func-  
 352 tion  $f(\vec{r}, p, t)$  depending on location  $\vec{r}$ , magnitude of momentum  $p$  and  
 353 time  $t$ . Often instead of the momentum  $p$  the rigidity  $R = pc/q$  is  
 354 used, with  $c$  and  $q$  denoting the speed of light and the particle charge,  
 355 respectively. The equation contains, in addition to the effects of convec-  
 356 tion velocity  $\vec{v}$  and drift  $\vec{v}_{dr}$  in the magnetic field  $\vec{B}$  a fully anisotropic  
 357 diffusion tensor:

$$\overleftrightarrow{\kappa} = \begin{pmatrix} \kappa_{\perp r} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \kappa_{\perp \theta} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \kappa_{\parallel} \end{pmatrix} \quad (2)$$

358 This tensor, denoted here in spherical polar coordinates  $(r, \theta, \varphi)$ , is  
 359 formulated with respect to the local magnetic field, see Fig. 2. Vari-  
 360 ous suggestions for the explicit form of its elements have been made,



*Figure 2.* Illustration of the elements of the diffusion tensor. The coefficient  $\kappa_{\parallel}$  describes the diffusion along the local magnetic field  $\vec{B}$ .

361 see, e.g., Burger and Hattingh (1998), Fichtner et al. (2000), Ferreira  
 362 et al. (2001), Matthaeus et al. (2003), Bieber et al. (2004), or Shalchi  
 363 and Schlickeiser (2004). The transport equation is generally solved  
 364 numerically using mixed boundary conditions.

365 For quantitative studies of interstellar-terrestrial relations it is nec-  
 366 essary to have a model of a three-dimensional heliosphere, which is  
 367 immersed in a dynamic local interstellar medium. There are at least two  
 368 reasons why such model should be three-dimensional. First, a compre-  
 369 hensive and self-consistent treatment of the cosmic ray transport must  
 370 take into account the three-dimensional structure of the turbulent helio-  
 371 spheric plasma and, second, the heliosphere can be in a disturbed state  
 372 for which no axisymmetric description can be justified. The present  
 373 state-of-the-art of the modelling of a dynamic heliosphere with a self-  
 374 consistent treatment of the transport of cosmic rays is reviewed in  
 375 Fichtner (2005). As is pointed out in that paper, the major challenge  
 376 is the development of a three-dimensional hybrid model. This task re-  
 377 quires, on the one hand, the generalisation of the modelling discussed  
 378 in the following section and, on the other hand, the formulation of  
 379 three-dimensional models of the heliospheric plasma dynamics.

## 380 5.2. THE DYNAMICAL HELIOSPHERE

381 The model of the dynamical heliosphere is in most cases based on the  
 382 following (normalized) magneto-hydrodynamical equations

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \begin{pmatrix} \rho \\ \rho \vec{v} \\ e \\ \vec{B} \end{pmatrix} + \nabla \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \rho \vec{v} \\ \rho \vec{v} \vec{v} + (p_{th} + \frac{1}{2} B^2) \hat{I} - \vec{B} \vec{B} \\ (e + p_{th} + \frac{1}{2} B^2) \vec{v} - \vec{B} (\vec{v} \cdot \vec{B}) \\ \vec{v} \vec{B} - \vec{B} \vec{v} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} Q_\rho \\ \vec{Q}_{\rho \vec{v}} \\ Q_e \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (3)$$

383 for each thermal component taken into account. Here,  $\rho$  is the mass  
 384 density,  $\vec{v}$  the velocity,  $e$  the total energy density and  $p_{th}$  the thermal  
 385 pressure of a given component.  $\vec{B}$  is the magnetic field and  $\hat{I}$  the unity  
 386 tensor. The terms  $Q_\rho$ ,  $\vec{Q}_{\rho \vec{v}}$  and  $Q_e$  describe the exchange of mass, mo-  
 387 mentum and energy between the thermal components and with the  
 388 cosmic rays if present. For the closure of Eq. (3) an equation of state  
 389 for each component is needed, for which usually the ideal gas equation  
 390 is taken.

391 Alternatively, the treatment of hydrogen atoms can be based on  
 392 their kinetic transport equation:

$$\frac{\partial f_H}{\partial t} + \vec{w} \cdot \nabla f_H + \frac{\vec{F}}{m_p} \cdot \nabla_w f_H = P - L \quad (4)$$

393 Here  $f_H$  is the distribution function of hydrogen atoms with velocity  $\vec{w}$ .  
394 The force  $\vec{F}$  is the effect of gravity and radiation pressure, while  $P$  and  
395  $L$  describe the sources and sinks, respectively. This equation takes into  
396 account, that the atoms may not collide sufficiently frequent, to allow  
397 a single-fluid approach (Baranov and Malama, 1993; Lipatov et al.,  
398 1998; Müller et al., 2000; Izmodenov, 2001). Heerikhuisen et al. (2006)  
399 have demonstrated, however, that a multifluid approach for hydrogen  
400 leads to a reasonable accurate description of the global heliosphere,  
401 comparable to the kinetic models.

402 To keep computing time for the solution of Eqs. (3) affordable, in  
403 most cases the number of species in 3-D models is restricted to protons  
404 and neutral hydrogen atoms (Zank, 1999; Fahr, 2004; Izmodenov, 2004;  
405 Borrmann and Fichtner, 2005). In sophisticated MHD models, which  
406 nowadays have been developed (Ratkiewicz et al., 1998; Opher et al.,  
407 2004; Pogorelov, 2004; Pogorelov et al., 2004; Washimi et al., 2005),  
408 computing time is even more critical and therefore only protons are  
409 treated, except in Pogorelov and Zank (2005) who include also hydrogen  
410 atoms.

411 In order to include more species the space dimension has to be  
412 reduced. In the 2-D hydrodynamic codes so far up to five species could  
413 simultaneously and self-consistently be included, namely in addition to  
414 protons and hydrogen also pickup ions (PUIs) as seed for the anomalous  
415 cosmic ray (ACR) component and the galactic cosmic rays (GCRs)  
416 (Fahr et al., 2000).

417 Recent developments allow to combine the kinetic modeling of the  
418 cosmic ray transport equation (1) with the five species approach, re-  
419 sulting in a hybrid model (Scherer and Ferreira, 2005a; Scherer and  
420 Ferreira, 2005b; Ferreira and Scherer, 2005).

421 The dynamics of the heliosphere includes time varying boundary  
422 conditions for both the solar activity cycle and the changing interstellar  
423 medium. The inner boundary condition determines the structure of  
424 the global heliosphere as well as the cosmic ray flux at the Earth on  
425 time scales of tens to thousands of years. For the longer periods, i.e.  
426 millions of years, the changes of the outer boundary conditions is more  
427 important. Details of modelling and its support by data are discussed  
428 in the following sections.



429

## Part III

430

# Galactic Cosmic Rays



431

## 6. Long-term Variation

432 The galactic cosmic ray flux reaching the outskirts of the Milky Way  
 433 (MW) is often regarded as a constant. However, on long enough time  
 434 scales, the galactic environment varies, and with it so does the density  
 435 of cosmic rays in the vicinity of the solar system. In this section, we will  
 436 concentrate on these variations, which are larger than the short term  
 437 modulations by the solar wind. In particular, we expect variations from  
 438 spiral arm passages over the  $10^8$  yr time scale, while Star Formation  
 439 Rate (SFR) variations in the Milky Way are expected to be a dominant  
 440 cause of Cosmic Ray Flux (CRF) variability on even longer time scales.  
 441 We discuss here the expected variability over these scales, together with  
 442 the empirical evidence used to reconstruct the actual variations. On  
 443 shorter time scales, local inhomogeneities in the galactic environment  
 444 or the occurrence of a nearby supernova can give rise to large variations.  
 445 These variations will not be discussed since no definitive predictions yet  
 446 exist nor do reliable reconstructions of the CRF on these shorter scales,  
 447 which are still long relative to the cosmogenic records on Earth.

### 448 6.1. STAR FORMATION RATE

449 The local and overall SFR in the MW is not constant. Variations in the  
 450 SFR will in turn control the rate of supernovae. Moreover, supernova  
 451 remnants accelerate cosmic rays (at least with energies  $\lesssim 10^{15}$  eV),  
 452 and inject fresh high-Z material into the galaxy. Thus, cosmic rays and  
 453 galactic nuclear enrichment, is proportional to the SFR.

454 Although there is a lag of several million years between the birth  
 455 and death of massive stars, this lag is small when compared to the  
 456 relevant time scales at question. Over the “galactic short term”, i.e.,  
 457 on time scales of  $10^8$  yr or less, the record of nearby star formation is  
 458 “Lagrangian”, i.e., the star formation in the vicinity of the moving solar  
 459 system. This should record passages through galactic spiral arms. On  
 460 longer time scales, of order  $10^9$  yr or longer, mixing is efficient enough to  
 461 homogenize the azimuthal distribution in the Galaxy (Wielen, 1977).  
 462 In other words, the long-term star formation rate, as portrayed by  
 463 nearby stars, should record the long term changes in the Milky Way  
 464 SFR activity. These variations may arise, for example, from a merger  
 465 with a satellite or a nearby passage of one.

466 Scalo (1987), using the mass distribution of nearby stars, concluded  
 467 that the SFR had peaks at 0.3 Gyr and 2 Gyr before present (BP).  
 468 Barry (1988), and a more elaborate and recent analysis by Rocha-Pinto  
 469 et al. (2000), measured the star formation activity of the Milky Way

470 using chromospheric ages of late type dwarfs. They found a dip between  
 471 1 and 2 Gyr and a maximum at 2-2.5 Gyr b.p. (see also Fig. 3).

472 The data in Fig. 3 are not corrected for selection effects (namely,  
 473 the upward trend with time is a selection effect, favorably selecting  
 474 younger clusters more of which did not yet dissolve). Since the clusters  
 475 in the catalog used are spread to cover two nearby spiral arms, the  
 476 signal arising from the passage of spiral arms is smeared, such that  
 477 the graph depicts a more global SFR activity (i.e., in our galactic  
 478 ‘quadrant’). On longer time scales (1.5 Gyr and more), the galactic  
 479 azimuthal stirring is efficient enough for the data to reflect the SFR in  
 480 the whole disk. There is a clear minimum in the SFR between 1 and  
 481 2 Gyr BP, and there are two prominent peaks around 0.3 and 2.2 Gyr  
 482 BP. Interestingly, the Large Magellanic Cloud (LMC) perigalacticon  
 483 should have occurred sometime between 0.2 and 0.5 Gyr BP in the  
 484 last passage, and between 1.6 and 2.6 Gyr BP in the previous passage.  
 485 This might explain the peaks in activity seen. This is corroborated with  
 486 evidence of a very high SFR in the LMC about 2 Gyr BP and a dip at  
 487 0.7-2 Gyr BP (Gardiner et al., 1994; Lin et al., 1995). Also depicted  
 488 are the periods during which glaciations were seen on Earth: The late  
 489 Archean (3 Gyr) and mid-Proterozoic (2.2-2.4 Gyr BP) which corre-  
 490 late with the previous LMC perigalacticon passage (Gardiner et al.,  
 491 1994; Lin et al., 1995) and the consequent SFR peak in the MW and  
 492 LMC. The lack of glaciations in the interval 1-2 Gyr BP correlates  
 493 with a clear minimum in activity in the MW (and LMC). Also, the  
 494 particularly long Carboniferous-Permian glaciation, correlates with the  
 495 SFR peak at 300 Myr BP and the last LMC perigalacticon. The late  
 496 Neo-Proterozoic ice ages correlate with a less clear SFR peak around  
 497 500-900 Myr BP. Since both the astronomical and the geological data  
 498 over these long time scales have much to be desired, the correlation  
 499 should be considered as an assuring consistency. By themselves, they  
 500 are not enough to serve as the basis of firm conclusions.

501 Another approach for the reconstruction of the SFR, is to use the  
 502 cluster age distribution. A rudimentary analysis reveals peaks of ac-  
 503 tivity around 0.3 and 0.7 Gyr BP, and possibly a dip between 1 and  
 504 2 Gyr (as seen in Fig. 3). A more recent analysis considered better  
 505 cluster data and only nearby clusters, closer than 1.5 kpc (de La Fuente  
 506 Marcos and de La Fuente Marcos, 2004). Besides the above peaks which  
 507 were confirmed with better statistical significance, two more peaks were  
 508 found at 0.15 and 0.45 Gyr. At this temporal and spatial resolution,  
 509 we are seeing the spiral arm passages. On longer time scales, cluster  
 510 data reveals a notable dip between 1 and 2 Gyr (Shaviv, 2003a; de La  
 511 Fuente Marcos and de La Fuente Marcos, 2004).



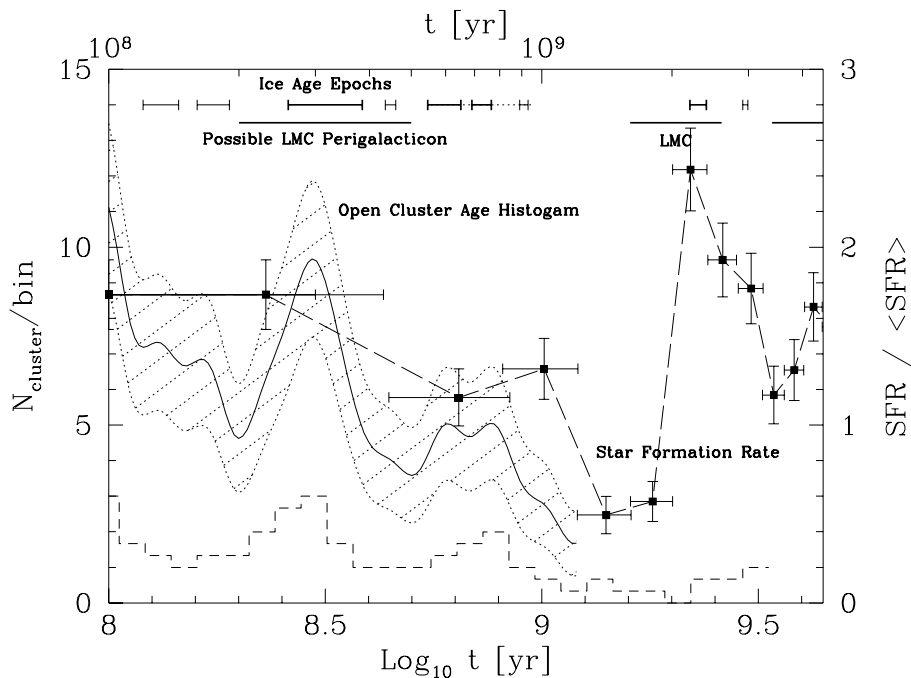


Figure 3. The history of the SFR. The squares with error bars are the SFR calculated using chromospheric ages of nearby stars (Rocha-Pinto et al., 2000), which is one of several SFR reconstructions available. These data are corrected for different selection biases and are binned into 0.4 Gyr bins. The line and hatched region describe a 1-2-1 average of the histogram of the ages of nearby open clusters (using the Loktin et al. (1994), catalog), and the expected 1- $\sigma$  error bars.

## 512 6.2. SPIRAL ARM PASSAGES

513 On time scales shorter than those affecting global star formation in  
 514 the Milky Way, the largest perturber of the local environment is our  
 515 passages through the galactic spiral arms.

516 The period with which spiral arms are traversed depends on the  
 517 relative angular speed around the center of the galaxy, between the  
 518 solar system with  $\Omega_{\odot}$  and the spiral arms with  $\Omega_p$ :

$$\Delta T = \frac{2\pi}{m |\Omega_{\odot} - \Omega_p|}, \quad (5)$$

519 where  $m$  is the number of spiral arms.

520 Our edge-on vantage point is unfortunate in this respect, since it  
 521 complicates the determination of both the geometry and the dynamics  
 522 of the spiral arms. This is of course required for the prediction of the

523 spiral arm passages. In fact, the understanding of neither has reached  
524 a consensus.

525 Claims in the literature for a 2-armed and a 4-armed structure are  
526 abundant. There is even a claim for a combined 2+4 armed structure  
527 (Amaral and Lepine, 1997). Nevertheless, if one examines the  $v-l$  maps  
528 of molecular gas, then it is hard to avoid the conclusion that *outside*  
529 the solar circle, there are 4 arms<sup>1</sup> (Blitz et al., 1983; Dame et al.,  
530 2001). Within the solar circle, however, things are far from clear. This  
531 is because  $v-l$  maps become ambiguous for radii smaller than  $R_\odot$ , such  
532 that each arm is folded and appears twice ( $R_\odot$  is the present distance  
533 of the Sun from the galactic center). Shaviv (2003a) has shown that  
534 if the outer 4 arms obey the simple density wave dispersion relation,  
535 such that they cannot exist beyond the 4:1 Lindblad resonances then  
536 two sets of arms should necessarily exist. In particular, the fact that  
537 these arms are apparent out to  $r_{out} \approx 2R_\odot$  necessarily implies that  
538 their inner extent, the inner Lindblad radius, should roughly be at  $R_\odot$ .  
539 Thus, the set of arms internal to our radius should belong to a set other  
540 than the outer 4 arms.

541 The dynamics, i.e., the pattern speed of the arms, is even less un-  
542 derstood than the geometry. A survey of the literature (Shaviv, 2003a)  
543 reveals that about half of the observational determinations of the rela-  
544 tive pattern speed  $\Omega_\odot - \Omega_p$  cluster around 9 to 13 km s<sup>-1</sup>kpc<sup>-1</sup>, while  
545 the other half are spread between -4 and 5 km s<sup>-1</sup>kpc<sup>-1</sup>. In fact, one  
546 analysis revealed that both  $\Omega_\odot - \Omega_p = 5$  and 11.5 km s<sup>-1</sup>kpc<sup>-1</sup> fit the  
547 data equally well (Palous et al., 1977).

548 Interestingly, if spiral arms are a density wave (Lin and Shu, 1964),  
549 as is commonly believed (e.g., Binney and Tremaine, 1987), then the  
550 observations of the 4-armed spiral structure in HI outside the Galactic  
551 solar orbit (Blitz et al., 1983) severely constrain the pattern speed to  
552 satisfy  $\Omega_\odot - \Omega_p \gtrsim 9.1 \pm 2.4$  km s<sup>-1</sup>kpc<sup>-1</sup>, since otherwise the four  
553 armed density wave would extend beyond the outer 4:1 Lindblad reso-  
554 nance (Shaviv, 2003a).

555 This conclusion provides theoretical justification for the smaller pat-  
556 tern speed. However, it does not explain why numerous different esti-  
557 mates for  $\Omega_p$  exist. A resolution of this “mess” arises if we consider the  
558 possibility that at least two spiral sets exist, each one having a different  
559 pattern speed. Indeed, in a stellar cluster birth place analysis, which  
560 allows for this possibility, it was found that the Sagittarius-Carina arm  
561 appears to be a superposition of two arms (Naoz and Shaviv, 2004).  
562 One has a relative pattern speed of  $\Omega_\odot - \Omega_{P,Carina,1} = 10.6_{-0.5sys}^{+0.7} \pm$

---

<sup>1</sup> Actually, 3 are seen, but if a roughly symmetric set is assumed, then a forth arm should simply be located behind the galactic center.

563  $1.6_{stat}$  km s<sup>-1</sup>kpc<sup>-1</sup> and appears also in the Perseus arm external to the  
 564 solar orbit. The second set is nearly co-rotating with the solar system,  
 565 with  $\Omega_{\odot} - \Omega_{P,Carina,2} = -2.7_{-0.5sys}^{+0.4} \pm 1.3_{stat}$  km s<sup>-1</sup>kpc<sup>-1</sup>. The Perseus  
 566 arm may too be harboring a second set. The Orion “armlet” where the  
 567 solar system now resides (and which is located in between the Perseus  
 568 and Sagittarius-Carina arms), appears too to be nearly co-rotating with  
 569 us, with  $\Omega_{\odot} - \Omega_{p,Orion} = -1.8_{-0.3sys}^{+0.2} \pm 0.7_{stat}$  km s<sup>-1</sup>kpc<sup>-1</sup>.

570 For comparison, a combined average of the 7 previous measurements  
 571 of the 9 to 13 km s<sup>-1</sup>kpc<sup>-1</sup> range, which appears to be an established  
 572 fact for both the Perseus and Sagittarius-Carina arms, gives  $\Omega_{\odot} - \Omega_p =$   
 573  $11.1 \pm 1$  km s<sup>-1</sup>kpc<sup>-1</sup>. At reasonable certainly, however, a second set  
 574 nearly co-rotating with the solar system exists as well.

575 The relative velocity between the solar system and the first set of  
 576 spiral arms implies that every  $\sim 150$  Myr, the environment near the  
 577 solar system will be that of a spiral arm. Namely, we will witness more  
 578 frequent nearby supernovae, more cosmic rays, more molecular gas as  
 579 well as other activity related to massive stars. We will show below that  
 580 there is a clear independent record of the passages through the arms of  
 581 the first set. On the other hand, passages through arms of the second  
 582 set happen infrequently enough for them to have been reliably recorded.

583 To estimate the variable CRF expected while the solar system orbits  
 584 the galaxy, one should construct a simple diffusion model which con-  
 585 sideres that the sources reside in the Galactic spiral arms. A straight  
 586 forward possibility is to amend the basic CR diffusion models (e.g.,  
 587 Berezhinskii et al. (1990)) to include a source distribution located in the  
 588 Galactic spiral arms. Namely, one can replace a homogeneous disk with  
 589 an arm geometry as given for example by Taylor and Cordes (1993),  
 590 and solve the time dependent diffusion problem as was done by Shaviv  
 591 (2003a). Heuristically, such a model is sketched in Fig. 4.

592 The main model parameters include a CR diffusion coefficient, a  
 593 halo half width (beyond which the CRs diffuse much more rapidly)  
 594 and of course the angular velocity  $\Omega_{\odot} - \Omega_p$  of the solar system *relative*  
 595 to the spiral arm pattern speed. The latter number is obtained from  
 596 the above observations, while typical diffusion parameters include a CR  
 597 diffusion coefficient of  $D = 10^{28}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/s, which is a typical value obtained  
 598 in diffusion models for the CRs (Berezhinskii et al., 1990; Lisenfeld et al.,  
 599 1996; Webber and Soutoul, 1998), or a halo half-width of 2 kpc, which  
 600 again is a typical value obtained in diffusion models (Berezhinskii et al.,  
 601 1990). Note that given a diffusion coefficient, there is a relatively narrow  
 602 range of effective halo widths which yields a Be age consistent with  
 603 observations (Lukasiak et al., 1994).

604 For the nominal values chosen in the diffusion model and the pattern  
 605 speed found above, the expected CRF changes from about 25% of the

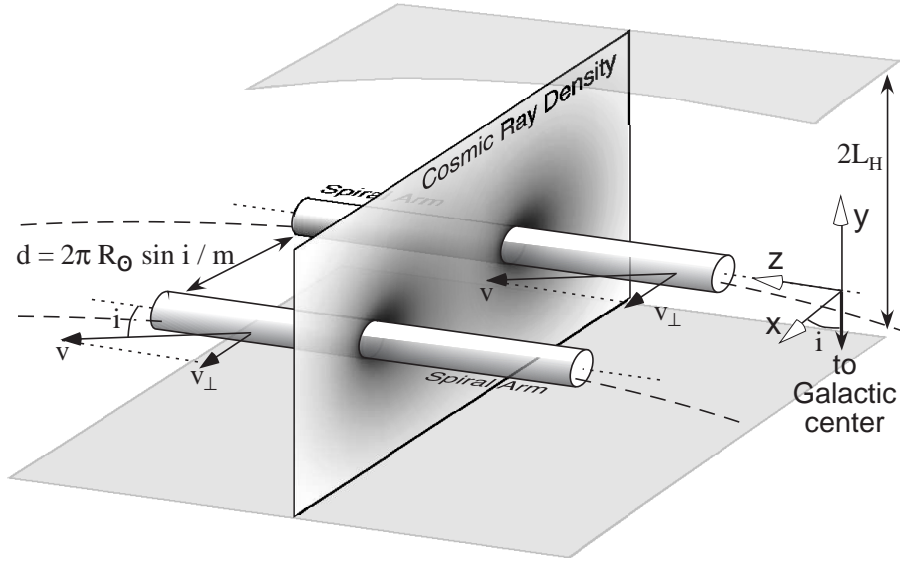


Figure 4. The components of the diffusion model constructed to estimate the Cosmic Ray flux variation. We assume for simplicity that the CR sources reside in Gaussian cross-sectioned spiral arms and that these are cylinders to first approximation. This is permissible since the pitch angle  $i$  of the spirals is small. The diffusion takes place in a slab of half width  $l_H$ , beyond which the diffusion coefficient is effectively infinite.

606 current day CRF to about 135%. Moreover, the average CRF obtained  
 607 in units of today's CRF is 76%. This is consistent with measurements  
 608 showing that the average CRF over the period 150-700 Myr BP, was  
 609 about 28% lower than the current day CRF (Lavielle et al., 1999).

610 Interestingly, the temporal behavior is both skewed and lagging after  
 611 the spiral arm passages (Fig. 5). The lag arises because the spiral arms  
 612 are defined through the free electron distribution. However, the CRs are  
 613 emitted from which on average occur roughly 15 Myr after the average  
 614 ionizing photons are emitted. The skewness arises because it takes time  
 615 for the CRs to diffuse after they are emitted. As a result, before the  
 616 region of a given star reaches an arm, the CR density is low since no  
 617 CRs were recently injected in that region and the sole flux is of CRs that  
 618 succeed to diffuse to the region from large distances. After the region  
 619 crosses the spiral arm, the CR density is larger since locally there was a  
 620 recent injection of new CRs which only slowly disperse. This typically  
 621 introduces a 10 Myr lag in the flux, totaling about 25 Myr with the  
 622 delay. This lag is actually observed in the synchrotron emission from  
 623 M51, which shows a peaked emission trailing the spiral arms (Longair,  
 624 1994).

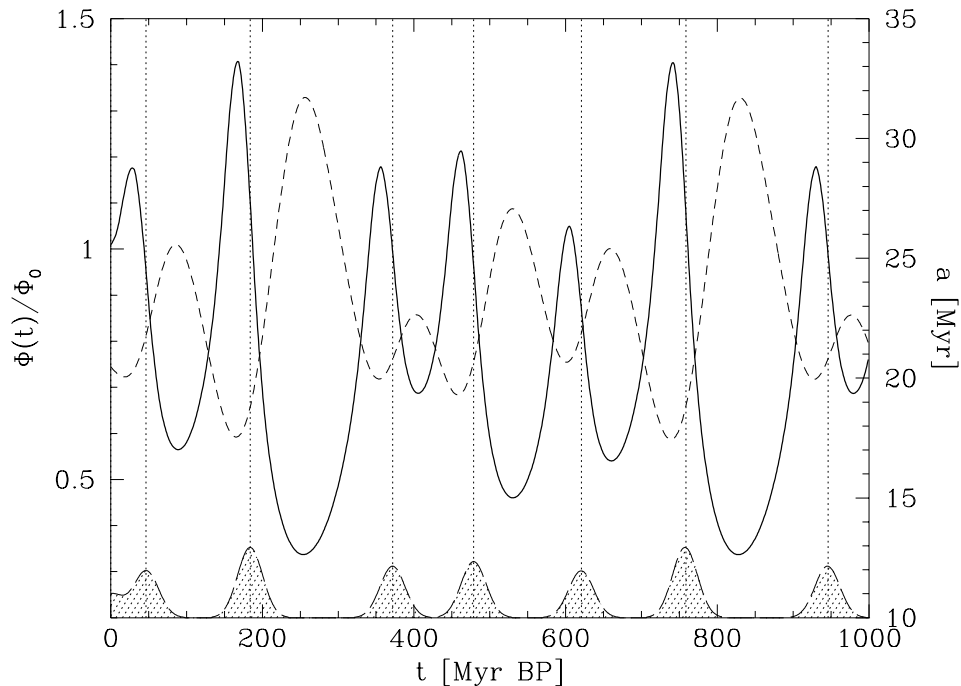


Figure 5. The cosmic-ray flux variability and age as a function of time for  $D = 10^{28} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$  and  $l_H = 2 \text{ kpc}$ . The solid line is the cosmic-ray flux, the dashed line is the age of the cosmic rays as measured using the Be isotope ratio. The shaded regions at the bottom depict the location, relative amplitude (i.e., it is not normalized) and width of the spiral arms as defined through the free electron density in the Taylor and Cordes model. The peaks in the flux are lagging behind the spiral arm crosses due to the SN-III lag. Moreover, the flux distribution is skewed towards later times.

### 625 6.3. COSMIC RAY RECORD IN IRON METEORITES

626 Various small objects in the solar system, such as asteroids or cometary  
 627 nuclei, break apart over time. Once the newly formed surfaces of the  
 628 debris are exposed to cosmic rays, they begin to accumulate spallation  
 629 products. Some of the products are stable and simply accumulate with  
 630 time, while other products are radioactive and reach an equilibrium  
 631 between the formation rate and their radioactive decay. Some of this  
 632 debris reaches Earth as meteorites. Since chondrites (i.e., stony mete-  
 633 orites) generally “crumble” over  $\lesssim 10^8 \text{ yr}$ , we have to resort to the rarer  
 634 iron meteorites, which crumble over  $\lesssim 10^9 \text{ yr}$ , if we wish to study the  
 635 CRF exposure over longer time scales.

636 The cosmic ray exposure age is obtained using the ratio between  
 637 the amount of the accumulating and the unstable nuclei. Basically,

638 the exposure age is a measure of the integrated CRF, as obtained  
 639 by the accumulating isotope, in units of the CRF “measured” using  
 640 the unstable nucleus. Thus, the “normalization” flux depends on the  
 641 average flux over the last decay time of the unstable isotope and not on  
 642 the average flux over the whole exposure time. If the CRF is assumed  
 643 constant, then the flux obtained using the radioactive isotope can be  
 644 assumed to be the average flux over the life of the exposed surface.  
 645 Only in such a case, can the integrated CRF be translated into a real  
 646 age.

647 Already quite some time ago, various groups obtained that the expo-  
 648 sure ages of iron meteorites based on “short” lived isotopes (e.g.,  $^{10}\text{Be}$ )  
 649 are inconsistent with ages obtained using the long lived unstable isotope  
 650  $^{40}\text{K}$ , with a half life of  $\sim 1$  Gyr. In essence, the first set of methods  
 651 normalize the exposure age to the flux over a few million years or less,  
 652 while in the last method, the exposure age is normalized to the average  
 653 flux over the life time of the meteorites. The inconsistency could be  
 654 resolved only if one concludes that over the past few Myr, the CRF  
 655 has been higher by about 28% than the long term average (Hampel  
 656 and Schaeffer, 1979; Schaeffer et al., 1981; Aylmer et al., 1988; Lavielle  
 657 et al., 1999).

658 More information on the CRF can be obtained if one makes further  
 659 assumptions. Particularly, if one assumes that the parent bodies of iron  
 660 meteorites tend to break apart at a constant rate (or at least at a rate  
 661 which only has slow variations), then one can statistically derive the  
 662 CRF history. This was done by Shaviv (2003a), using the entire set of  
 663  $^{40}\text{K}$  dated iron meteorites. To reduce the probability that the breaking  
 664 apart is real, i.e., that a single collision event resulted with a parent  
 665 body braking apart into many meteorites, each two meteorites with a  
 666 small exposure age difference (with  $\Delta a \leq 5 \times 10^7$  yr), and with the same  
 667 iron group classification, were replaced by a single effective meteor with  
 668 the average exposure age.

669 If the CRF is variable, then the exposure age of meteorites will be  
 670 distorted. Long periods during which the CRF was low, such that the  
 671 exposure clock “ticked” slowly, will appear to contract into a short  
 672 period in the exposure age time scale. This implies that the exposure  
 673 ages of meteorites is expected to cluster around (exposure age) epochs  
 674 during which the CRF was low, while there will be very few meteors in  
 675 periods during which the CRF was high.

676 Over the past 1 Gyr recorded in iron meteorites, the largest varia-  
 677 tions are expected to arise from our passages through the galactic spiral  
 678 arms. Thus, we expect to see cluster of ages every  $\sim 150$  Myr. The  
 679 actual exposure ages of meteorites are plotted in Fig. 6, where periodic  
 680 clustering in the ages can be seen. This clustering is in agreement with

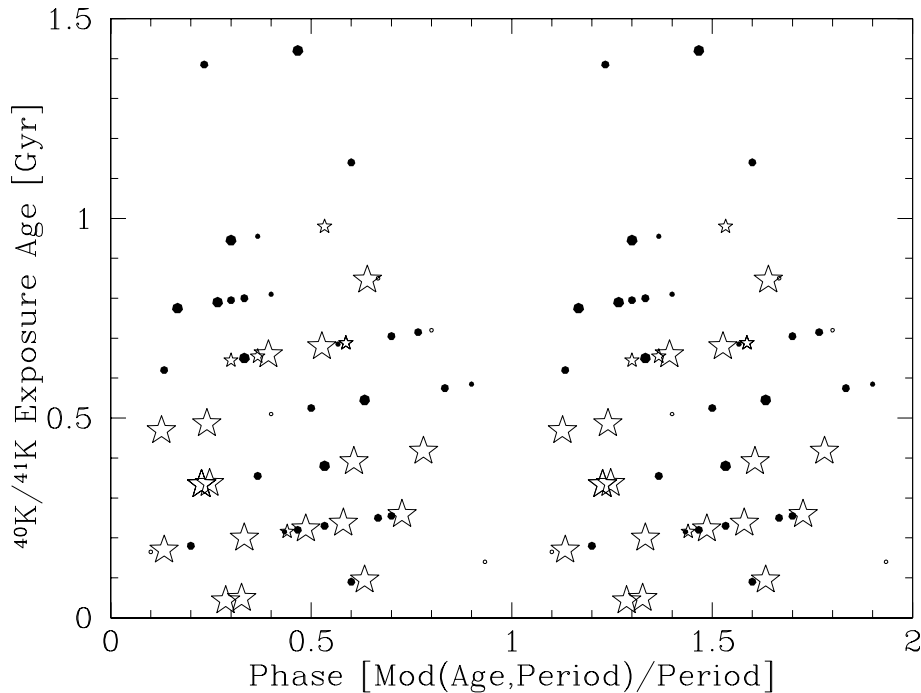


Figure 6. The exposure age of iron meteorites plotted as a function of their phase in a 147 Myr period. The dots are the  $^{40}\text{K}$  exposure ages (larger dots have lower uncertainties), while the stars are  $^{36}\text{Cl}$  based measurements. The K measurements do not suffer from the long term “distortion” arising from the difference between the short term (10 Myr) CRF average and the long term (1 Gyr) half life of K (Lavielle et al. 1999). However, they are intrinsically less accurate. To use the Cl data, we need to “correct” the exposure ages to take into account this difference. We do so using the result of Lavielle et al. (1999). Since the Cl data is more accurate, we use the Cl measurement when both K and Cl are available for a given meteorite. When less than 50 Myr separates several meteorites of the same iron group classification, we replace them with their average in order to discount for the possibility that one single parent body split into many meteorites. We plot two periods such that the overall periodicity will be even more pronounced. We see that meteorites avoid having exposure ages with given phases (corresponding to epochs with a high CRF). Using the Rayleigh Analysis, the probability of obtaining a signal with such a large statistical significance as a fluke from random Poisson events, with *any* period between 50 and 500 Myr, is less than 0.5%. The actual periodicity found is  $147 \pm 6$  Myr, consistent with both the astronomical and geological data.

681 the expected variations in the cosmic ray flux. Namely, iron meteorites  
 682 recorded our passages through the galactic spiral arms.

683 Interestingly, this record of past cosmic ray flux variations and the  
 684 determination of the galactic spiral arm pattern speed is different in  
 685 its nature from the astronomical determinations of the pattern speed.

686 This is because the astronomical determinations assume that the Sun  
 687 remained in the same galactic orbit it currently occupies. The mete-  
 688 oritic measurement is “Lagrangian”. It is the measurement relative to a  
 689 moving particle, the heliosphere, which could have had small variations  
 690 in its orbital parameters. In fact, because of the larger solar metallicity  
 691 than the solar environment, the solar system is more likely to have  
 692 migrated outwards than inwards. This radial diffusion gives an error  
 693 and a bias when comparing the effective, i.e., “Lagrangian” measured  
 694  $\tilde{\Omega}_p$ , to the “Eulerian” measurements of the pattern speed:

$$\tilde{\Omega}_p - \Omega_p = 0.5 \pm 1.5 \text{ km s}^{-1} \text{ kpc}^{-1} \quad (6)$$

695 Taking this into consideration, the observed meteoritic periodicity, with  
 696  $P = 147 \pm 6 \text{ Myr}$ , implies that  $\Omega_{\odot} - \Omega_p = 10.2 \pm 1.5_{sys} \pm 0.5_{stat}$ , where  
 697 the systematic error arises from possible diffusion of the solar orbital  
 698 parameters. This result is consistent with the astronomically measured  
 699 pattern speed of the first set of spiral arms.

## 700 7. Cosmic Ray Spectra inside and outside of Galactic Arms

701 In this section we want to follow the line of argumentations of the  
 702 previous one, but shall approach the problem based on more funda-  
 703 mental physical considerations. The passage of the heliosphere through  
 704 dense interstellar clouds has many interesting direct effects (see e.g.  
 705 Yeghikyan and Fahr, 2003, 2004a, 2004b) and also influences via de-  
 706 creased modulation the near-Earth flux intensities of GCRs and of  
 707 anomalous cosmic rays (ACRs) (see Scherer, 2000, Scherer et al., 2001b,  
 708 Scherer et al., 2001a). Here we study the problem of GCR spectra which  
 709 are to be expected inside and outside of galactic arms.

### 710 7.1. ACCELERATIONS AT SHOCKS

711 Shocks, for a long time already, have been recognized as effective astro-  
 712 physical sites for particle acceleration. This is because particles, which  
 713 strongly interact with scattering centers embedded in astrophysical  
 714 magnetohydrodynamic plasma flows can easily and effectively profit  
 715 from strong velocity gradients occurring in these flows. Most effective in  
 716 this respect are velocity gradients which are established at astrophysical  
 717 MHD shocks. One may characterize the transition from upstream to  
 718 downstream velocities at such a shock by a typical transition scale  $\delta$  and  
 719 by the extent  $H$  of the whole region over which the acceleration pro-  
 720 cedure is considered. Then the particle transport equation (1) given in  
 721 section 5 needs to be solved for the case  $\delta \ll r_g \ll \lambda \ll H$  with  $r_g$  and



722  $\lambda$  being the gyroradius and the mean scattering length parallel to the  
 723 background magnetic field, respectively. For a quasi one-dimensional  
 724 shock, and for stationary conditions, at positions not too far from the  
 725 shock it transforms into the following one-dimensional equation:

$$u \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left[ D_{\parallel} \cos \theta \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \right] = \frac{1}{3} (u_+ - u_-) \delta(x) \frac{\partial f}{\partial \ln p} \quad (7)$$

726 where  $\pm$  denote the plasma parameters upstream (+) and downstream  
 727 (-) of the shock structure, respectively,  $u$  is the corresponding plasma  
 728 bulk speed, and  $D_{\parallel}$  the coefficient of spatial diffusion along the mag-  
 729 netic field.

730 Criteria, that in any case should be fulfilled by a formal solution of  
 731 the above equation, are:

732 A: steadiness of differential particle density at the shock, i.e.:

$$f_+(p, x = 0) = f_-(p, x = 0)$$

733 B: Continuity of differential streaming at the shock, i.e.:

$$\left[ u f - \kappa \frac{df}{dx} \right]_{+,0} = \left[ u f - \kappa \frac{df}{dx} \right]_{-,0}$$

734 C: Continuity of differential energy flow at the shock, i.e.:

735

$$\left[ -u \frac{\partial f}{\partial \ln p^3} - \kappa \frac{df}{dx} \right]_{+,0} = \left[ -u \frac{\partial f}{\partial \ln p^3} - \kappa \frac{df}{dx} \right]_{-,0}$$

736 Far from the shock one may assume unmodulated spectra with  
 737 asymptotic solutions given by  $f_{\pm}(p, x \rightarrow \pm\infty) = f_{\pm\infty}(p)$ . Downstream  
 738 of the shock ( $x \geq 0$ ) it is expected that  $f$  is independent on  $x$ , i.e.:  
 739  $f = f_{+\infty}(p)$ .

740 Upstream of the shock ( $x \leq 0$ ), however,  $f$  must be expected to be  
 741 modulated, i.e. given by:

$$f = f_{-\infty}(p) + (f_{+\infty}(p) - f_{-\infty}(p)) \exp \left[ u_- \int_0^x \frac{dx}{\kappa} \right] \quad (8)$$

742 The full solution for  $f_{+\infty}(p)$  matching all the above requirements then  
 743 is given by the following formal solution:

$$f_{+\infty}(p) = qp^{-q} \int_0^p f_{-\infty}(p') p'^{(q-1)} dp' \quad (9)$$

744 where the power index  $q$  is given by the expression:  $q = 3s/(s-1)$  with  
 745 the shock compression ratio  $s$  given by:  $s = u_-/u_+$ .

746 Given the spectral distribution far upstream of the shock in the form  
 747  $f_{-\infty}(p) \sim p^{-\Gamma}$  with  $\Gamma \leq q$  then Eq. (9) yields:

$$f_{+\infty}(p) \sim qp^{-q} \int_0^p p'^{-\Gamma} p'^{q-1} dp' = qp^{-q} \left( \frac{p^{q-\Gamma}}{q-\Gamma} \right) \Big|_0^p = \frac{q}{q-\Gamma} p^{-\Gamma} \quad (10)$$

748 Assuming, on the other hand, that  $f_{-\infty}(p) \sim p^{-\Gamma}$ , with  $\Gamma = \Gamma_0 \leq q$   
 749 for  $p \leq p_0$  only, and with  $\Gamma \geq q$  for  $p \geq p_0$ , then Eq. (9) in contrast  
 750 gives:

$$f_{+\infty}(p) \sim qp^{-q} \left[ \int_0^{p_0} p'^{q-\Gamma_0-1} dp' + \int_{p_0}^p p'^{q-\Gamma-1} dp' \right] \quad (11)$$

751 with the solutions for

$$f_{+\infty}(p) \sim \begin{cases} \frac{q}{q-\Gamma_0} p^{-\Gamma_0} & ; \quad p \leq p_0 \\ qp^{-q} \left[ \frac{1}{q-\Gamma_0} p_0^{q-\Gamma_0} + \frac{1}{q-\Gamma} |p^{q-\Gamma} - p_0^{q-\Gamma}| \right] & ; \quad p \geq p_0 \end{cases} \quad (12)$$

752 which finally evaluates to:

$$f_{+\infty}(p) \sim \frac{q}{\Gamma-q} \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right)^{-q} \left[ \frac{\Gamma-q}{q-\Gamma_0 p_0^{-\Gamma_0} + p_0^{-\Gamma} + p_0} \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right)^{-\Gamma} \right]$$

753 and simply is of the twin-power law form:

$$f_{+\infty}(p) = A \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right)^{-q} + B \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right)^{-\Gamma} \quad (13)$$

754 One should keep in mind that here  $\Gamma \geq q$  was assumed, which makes  
 755 it evident that the first term clearly is the leading term for  $p \gg p_0$   
 756 meaning that here one obtains a simple mono-power law:

$$f_{+\infty}(p \geq p_0) \sim \frac{q}{\Gamma-q} \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right)^{-q} \left[ \frac{\Gamma-q}{q-\Gamma_0} p_0^{-\Gamma_0} + p_0^{-\Gamma} \right] \sim \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right)^{-q} \quad (14)$$

757 In the following this solution for the shock-related GCR distribution  
 758 is to be applied to giant astrophysical shock waves like supernova blast  
 759 waves sporadically running out from collapsing stars.

## 760 7.2. SELF-SIMILAR BLAST WAVES

761 Supernova shock waves are considered in terms of spherical blast waves  
 762 under the assumption of self-similarity (see Sedov, 1946). For the pur-  
 763 pose of justifying this concept the outside pressure must be expected  
 764 to be equal to  $P_0 \simeq 0$ . The consideration starts with the adiabatic

765 Sedov phase which implies the initial explosion-induced SN energy  
 766 release  $E_B$  is converted into kinetic energy of the dynamics of the  
 767 mass-accumulating SN shell. The problem in this adiabatic phase is  
 768 fully determined by two quantities, namely  $E_B$  and the mass density  
 769  $\rho_0$  of the unperturbed, pristine interstellar medium.

770 In a spherically symmetric problem all hydrodynamic functions only  
 771 are functions of the distance  $r$  from the SN explosion center and of the  
 772 time  $t$  elapsed since the explosion event, and all solutions should allow a  
 773 self-similar scaling by  $r(t) = \alpha(t)r(t_0)$ . Since the quantity  $\Psi = E_B/\rho_0$   
 774 has the dimension [ $cm^5 \text{sec}^{-2}$ ], one can thus introduce the following  
 775 self-similar normalization:

$$\xi = r/x(t) = r \left( \frac{\rho_0}{E_B t^2} \right)^{1/5} \quad (15)$$

776 The special point  $R_s$  of the shock front location with the normalized  
 777 value  $\xi_s$  as function of time hence behaves like:

$$R_s(t) = \xi_s \left( \frac{E_B}{\rho_0} \right)^{1/5} t^{2/5} \quad (16)$$

778 As consequence from the above relation one easily derives the expansion  
 779 velocity of the SN shock front by:

$$u_- = \frac{dR_s}{dt} = \frac{2}{5} \frac{R_s}{t} = \xi_s \frac{2}{5} \left( \frac{E_B}{\rho_0} \right)^{1/5} t^{-3/5} \quad (17)$$

780 The upstream Mach number of the SN shock is permanently de-  
 781 creasing with time after the explosion event according to:

$$M(t) = M_0 \left( \frac{t}{t_0} \right)^{\eta-1} = \frac{\eta R_0}{t_0 C_0} \left( \frac{t}{t_0} \right)^{\eta-1} \quad (18)$$

782 where  $\eta = 2/5$  in a homogeneous low-pressure medium and  $M_0$  and  $C_0$   
 783 are the initial SN shock Mach number and the sound velocity of the  
 784 unperturbed interstellar medium. Roughly it can be estimated that  
 785 the adiabatic Sedov expansion starts, when the initial SN explosion  
 786 energy is converted into kinetic energy of the shell matter, i.e. when  
 787  $(4\pi/3)\rho_0 R_{s0}^3 C^2 M_0^2 = E_{SN}$  holds. This yields the time  $t_0$  after the  
 788 explosive event  $t = 0$  when the adiabatic phase of the shock expansion  
 789 starts as related to the initial shock distance by:

$$R_{s0} = 13.5 \left( \frac{m E_{SN}}{\rho_0} \right)^{1/5} t_0^{2/5} [pc] \quad (19)$$

## 790 7.3. GALACTIC COSMIC RAY SPECTRA

791 Based on a stochastic occurrence of SN events within the spiral arm  
 792 regions it may be necessary, before an inner-arm particle spectrum can  
 793 be estimated, to inspect various important time periods characterizing  
 794 the course of relevant physical processes, like the SN-occurrence period,  
 795 the SN shock passage time to the borders of the arm, the mean capture  
 796 time of energetic particles within the arm region or the diffusion time,  
 797 and the average particle acceleration time near the expanding SN shock  
 798 surface.

799 Starting from theoretical solutions of the cosmic ray transport equa-  
 800 tion as presented by Axford (1981), O’C Drury (1983) or Malkov and  
 801 O’C Drury (2001), where, as described above, a one-dimensional shock  
 802 geometry is assumed, one finds the following upstream solution  $f_-(x, p)$   
 803 for the spectrum of shock-accelerated energetic particles:

$$f_-(x, p) = \frac{C}{A} \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right)^{-q} \exp \left( \frac{u_-}{\kappa(p)} x \right) \quad (20)$$

804 Here  $C$  is a constant and the coordinate  $x$  denoting the linear dis-  
 805 tance from the planar shock surface is counted negative in the direction  
 806 upstream of the shock. The speed by which the shock passes over the  
 807 galactic material amounts to  $u_-$  and may be of the order of 1000 to  
 808 2500 km/s. Downstream of the shock it is assumed that the spatial  
 809 derivative of  $f_+$  vanishes, i.e.  $\partial f_+ / \partial x \simeq 0$ , meaning that  $f_+ \simeq \text{const}$ .

810 The absolute value of the distribution function  $f_-$  has not yet been  
 811 specified. Thus the value  $C$  needs to be fixed such as to fulfill flux  
 812 continuity relations at the shock expressing the fact that the total  
 813 outflow  $\Phi$  of the GCR fluxes to the left and to the right side of the  
 814 SN shock (i.e. the sum of the upstream and downstream streamings,  
 815 respectively, e.g. see Jokipii (1971), Gleeson and Axford (1968) has  
 816 to be identical with the flux of particles above the injection threshold  
 817  $p = p_0$  which are convected from the upstream side into the shock  
 818 and can serve as the seed of SN-accelerated GCRs. This requirement  
 819 expresses in the form (see Fahr, 1990):

$$\int \left[ \frac{1}{3} f_- u_- - \frac{1}{3} u_- p \frac{\partial f_-}{\partial p} - \kappa_- \frac{\partial f_-}{\partial x} \right] p^2 dp + \int \left[ \frac{1}{3} f_+ u_+ - \frac{1}{3} u_+ p \frac{\partial f_+}{\partial p} - \kappa_+ \frac{\partial f_+}{\partial x} \right] p^2 dp = \varepsilon(p_0) u_+ n_+ \quad (21)$$

820 where  $\varepsilon(p_0) n_+$  is the number of particles with momenta  $p\mu \leq -p_0$   
 821 upstream of the shock which can serve as seed of the GCRs. Evalu-  
 822 ating the above equation with the expression for  $f_{\pm}$  given in Eq. (20)

823 then, when reminding that at  $x = 0$  the upstream and downstream  
824 distribution functions are identical, i.e.  $f_- = f_+$  leads to:

$$\int u_- f_- \left[ \frac{1}{3} \left( 1 + \frac{1}{s} \right) \frac{4s-1}{s-1} - 1 \right] p^2 dp = \varepsilon(p_0) u_- n_0 \quad (22)$$

825 The above expression can finally be evaluated with the distribution  
826 function given by Eq. (20):

$$\frac{s^2 + 6s - 1}{3(s^2 - s)} \int f_0 p^2 dp = \frac{s^2 + 6s - 1}{3(s^2 - s)} C p_0^3 \int_1^\infty x^{-\frac{2+s}{s-1}} dx = \varepsilon(p_0) n_0 \quad (23)$$

827 which delivers for the quantity  $C$ :

$$C = \frac{3s\varepsilon(p_0)n_0}{(3s^2 + 2s - 3)p_0^3} \quad (24)$$

828 As a surprise the above result does not anymore show the explicit  
829 dependence of  $C$  on the upstream plasma velocity  $u_-$ . This dependence,  
830 however, implicitly is hidden in the value  $p_0$  for the critical momentum  
831 of the particle injection into the shock acceleration. In order to inject  
832 particles into the diffusive acceleration process, it is necessary that these  
833 particles have the dynamic virtue due to which they are not simply  
834 convected over the electric potential wall of the SN shock but become  
835 reflected at this wall at least for the first time (see e.g. Chalov and  
836 Fahr, 1995, Chalov and Fahr, 2000). For this to happen the following  
837 relation simply needs to be fulfilled:

$$\frac{1}{2}m(u_- - \frac{p_0}{m})^2 \leq \frac{1}{2}m(u_-^2 - u_+^2) \Rightarrow p_0 \geq mu_-(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{1}{s^2}}) \quad (25)$$

838 The percentage of particles with momenta  $p\mu \leq -p_0$  in the shifted  
839 Maxwellian distribution function, describing particles comoving with  
840 the upstream plasma flow, is then given by;

$$\epsilon(p_0) = \frac{1}{\pi^{1/2}} \int_{x_0}^\infty \exp(-x^2) dx = 1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \operatorname{erf}(x_0) = 1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} \operatorname{erf}(\kappa(s)M_s) \quad (26)$$

841 where  $x_0^2 = p_0^2/2KT_0m = mu_-^2g^2(s)/2KT_0 = \kappa^2(s)M_s^2$ . Here the fol-  
842 lowing notations have been used:  $g(s) = (1 - (1 - s^{-1})^{-1/2})$  with the  
843 Mach number of the upstream plasma defined by  $M_s^2 = mu_-^2/\gamma KT_0$ .

844 This finally delivers for  $C$  the expression:

$$C = 3sn_0 \frac{1 - \pi^{-1/2} \operatorname{erf}(\kappa(s)M_s)}{(3s^2 + 2s - 3)p_0^3} \quad (27)$$

845 This result expresses the fact that the absolute value of  $f_-$  given  
846 by  $C$  is determined by the upstream flow velocity  $u_-$ , the upstream

847 Mach number  $M_s$ , the compression ratio  $s$  as function of  $M_s$  and the  
 848 upstream plasma density  $n_0$  which is known to be greater by a factor  
 849 of about 10 in the spiral arms compared to inter-arm regions.

850 To describe the evolution in time and space of spectra for GCRs origi-  
 851 nating at SN shock waves one furthermore needs to know something  
 852 about the evolution of the SN shock at its propagation in circumstellar  
 853 space. Relying on the Sedov solution for the SN blast wave evolution  
 854 at its propagation into the ambient interstellar medium one can de-  
 855 scribe the propagation velocity  $U_1 = U_1(t)$  as a function of time by the  
 856 following relation (see Krymskii, Krymskii (1977b, 1977a)):

$$U_1(t) = \frac{2}{5} \left( \frac{2E_{SN}}{\rho_1} \right)^{1/5} t^{-3/5} \quad (28)$$

857 where  $E_{SN}$  denotes the total energy released by the SN explosion, and  
 858  $\rho_1$  is the ambient interstellar gas mass density ahead of the propagating  
 859 shock.

860 Keeping in mind that the compression ratio  $s$  as given by the Rankine-  
 861 Hugoniot relations writes:

$$s(t) = \frac{(\gamma + 1)M_1^2(t)}{(\gamma - 1)M_1^2(t) + 2} \quad (29)$$

862 where  $M_1(t)$  denotes the upstream Mach number depending on SN  
 863 shock evolution time  $t$  and is given by:

$$M_1^2(t) = \frac{\rho_1 U_1^2(t)}{\gamma P_1} = \frac{4}{25} \frac{\rho_1^{3/5}}{P_1} (2E_{SN})^{2/5} t^{-6/5} \quad (30)$$

864 one can predict the temporal change  $ds/dt$  of the SN shock compression  
 865 ratio. It then clearly turns out that the typical period  $\tau_s$  by which the  
 866 strength of the SN shock changes in time is large with respect to  $\tau_a(p)$ ,  
 867 i.e. that:

$$\tau_s = -\frac{s}{ds/dt} \geq \tau_a(p) = \frac{6s}{s-1} \frac{\kappa_1}{U_1^2} \quad (31)$$

#### 868 7.4. THE AVERAGE GCR SPECTRUM INSIDE GALACTIC ARMS

869 To calculate the average GCR spectrum for a casually placed space  
 870 point within the galactic arm regions we shall assume that such a point  
 871 is at a random distance with respect to casually occurring SN shock  
 872 fronts, the latter being true as consequence of stochastic occurrences  
 873 of SN explosions at random places in the arms. We shall denote the  
 874 casual x-axis position of an arbitrary space point with respect to the  
 875 center of a stochastic SN explosion by  $X$ . At time  $t$ , after the explosion

876 took place, the SN shock front has an actual  $x$ -axis position of  $R_x(t) =$   
 877  $\int_0^t U_1(t') dt'$  and thus the average GCR spectrum should be obtainable  
 878 by the following expression:

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{f(p)} = & \frac{1}{X_{\max} t_{\max}} \int_{X_{\min}}^{X_{\max}} dX \int_{t_{\min}}^{t_{\max}} dt' C(t') \left[ \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right)^{-q(t')} + B' \left( \frac{p}{p_0} \right)^{-\Gamma} \right] \\ & \times \exp \left[ -\frac{U_1(X - R_x(t'))}{\kappa(p)} H(R_x(t') - X) \right] \end{aligned} \quad (32)$$

879 Here the function  $H(\lambda)$  is the well known step function with  $H(\lambda) = 0$   
 880 for positive values of  $\lambda$ .

881 The quantity  $X_{\max} \simeq R_a$  is to determine the maximum distance  
 882 which a stochastically placed detector point may have to the SN explosion  
 883 center. This maximum distance, for physical reasons and in order  
 884 to make the expression (32) statistically relevant, should be selected  
 885 such that within the counted arm volume  $V_{\max} = \pi R_a^2 X_{\max}$  during a  
 886 time  $t_{\max}$  one obtains the probability “1” for a next SN explosion to  
 887 occur. With an SN- explosion rate  $\zeta$  per unit of time and volume within  
 888 the arm region one then finds  $X_{\max} = \left[ \pi R_a^2 \zeta t_{\max} \right]^{-1}$ . The quantity  
 889  $t_{\max}$  is taken as the time after SN explosion till which the evolving SN  
 890 shock front has upstream Mach numbers larger than or equal to 1 and  
 891 thus accelerates GCRs. One can conclude that diffusive acceleration of  
 892 GCRs can continue till the propagation speed  $U_1(t)$  of the SN shock  
 893 front falls below the local Alfvén speed  $v_{A1}$  impeding the pile-up of  
 894 MHD turbulences which act as scattering centers for GCRs bouncing  
 895 to and fro through the shock. From Eq. (30) one thus derives:

$$t_{\max} \simeq \left( \frac{2E_{SN}}{\rho_1} \right)^{1/3} \left( \frac{5}{2} v_{A1} \right)^{-5/3} \quad (33)$$

896 which for values given by Hartquist and Morfill (1983) (i.e.  $E_{SN} =$   
 897  $10^{51} \text{erg}$ ;  $\rho_1/m = 10 \text{cm}^{-3}$ ;  $v_{A1} = 10^6 \text{cm/s}$ ) evaluates to  $t_{\max} \simeq 6 \text{Myr}$ .  
 898 The distance  $X_{\min}$  denotes the SN shock distance from the SN explosion  
 899 center at time  $t_{\min}$  after explosion given by:

$$t_{\min} \simeq \left( \frac{2E_{SN}}{\rho_1} \right)^{1/3} \left( \frac{5}{2} U_{1,\max} \right)^{-5/3} \quad (34)$$

900 where  $U_{1,\max}$  is the maximum SN shock speed just after shock forma-  
 901 tion. For estimate purposes we may assume here that the following con-  
 902 nection can be assumed  $\frac{4\pi}{3} X_{\min}^3 \rho_1 U_{1,\max}^2 = E_{SN}$  and that a maximum  
 903 shock speed of  $U_{1,\max} = 3500 \text{km/s}$  can be adopted at the beginning of  
 904 the Sedov phase.

## 905 7.5. ESCAPE INTO THE INTERARM REGION

906 Assuming that the expression for  $f(p)$  given by the Eq. (32) is valid  
 907 for all space points located within a cylindrical tube along the central  
 908 axis of the spiral arm, i.e.  $f(p)$  represents an axially and temporally  
 909 averaged GCR spectrum for all near axis points within a galactic arm,  
 910 and adopting an arm-parallel magnetic field, then in addition to the  
 911 very efficient spatial diffusion parallel to the magnetic field a much  
 912 less efficient diffusion perpendicular to the field operates everywhere  
 913 which eventually lets GCR particles escape into the interarm region.  
 914 We describe this diffusion with respect to the cylindrical coordinate  $r$  as  
 915 a source-free, time-independent diffusion ( $\nabla \cdot (\vec{\kappa} f) = 0$ ) which gives  
 916 in cylindrical coordinates

$$\left( r\kappa_{\perp} \frac{\partial f}{\partial r} \right) = \text{const} = (r\kappa_{\perp} \frac{\partial f}{\partial r})_0 = -\pi r_0^2 \frac{f_0}{\tau_e} \quad (35)$$

917 where  $r_0$  is the radius of an inner tube within which the distribution  
 918 function  $f_0$  prevails, and where  $\tau_e$  is the period of GCR escape into the  
 919 interarm region. Then the solution for  $f = f(r)$  is obtained from the  
 920 expression:

$$f(r, p) = f(r_0, p) + \int_{r_0}^r \frac{\text{const}}{r'\kappa_{\perp}} dr' = f(r_0, p) \left( -\frac{\pi r_0^2}{\tau_e \kappa_{\perp}} \ln\left(\frac{r}{r_0}\right) \right) \quad (36)$$

921 At the border  $r = R_a$  of the arm to the interarm region the identity  
 922 at both sides of both GCR flux and the spectral intensity is required  
 923 yielding the following two relations:

$$R_a \kappa_{i\perp} \left| \frac{\partial f_i}{\partial r} \right| = R_a \kappa_{a\perp} \left| \frac{\partial f_a}{\partial r} \right| \quad \text{and} \quad |f_i|_{R_a} = |f_a|_{R_a} \quad (37)$$

924 where  $\kappa_{a\perp}$  and  $\kappa_{i\perp}$  denote spatial diffusion coefficients in the arm and  
 925 the interarm region, respectively. With these requirements one obtains  
 926 the distribution function  $f_i(r, p)$  in the interarm region as given in the  
 927 form:

$$f_i(r, p) = f(r_0, p) \left[ 1 - \frac{\pi r_0^2}{\tau_e} \left( \frac{1}{\kappa_{a\perp}} \ln\left(\frac{R_a}{r_0}\right) + \frac{1}{\kappa_{i\perp}} \ln\left(\frac{r}{R_a}\right) \right) \right] \quad (38)$$

928 To achieve consistency with the assumptions made in the derivations  
 929 above one should be able to justify a time-independence of the GCR  
 930 distribution function, i.e. the fact that  $\partial f / \partial t = 0$  is assumed. From  
 931 a simplified phase-space transport equation one can then derive the  
 932 requirement that time-independence of  $f$  is achieved, if the average



933 galactic arm SN occurrence period  $\tau_{SN}$  and the escape period  $\tau_e$  are  
 934 related by:

$$\tau_e = \frac{\tau_{SN}}{\left(1 - \frac{1}{p^3} q \chi n_1 \tau_{SN}\right)} = \frac{\tau_{SN}}{\left[1 + 4\left(\frac{p_{i0}}{p}\right)^3 \frac{\tau_{SN}}{\tau_{i0}}\right]} \quad (39)$$

935 where  $q = 3s/(s - 1)$  is the power index of the GCR spectrum and  
 936 where the momentum loss of GCR particles due to gas ionisations has  
 937 been assumed as  $\dot{p}_i \simeq -\chi n_1 p^{-2}$ , for details see Lerche and Schlickeiser,  
 938 Lerche and Schlickeiser, Lerche and Schlickeiser (1982a, 1982c, 1982b).  
 939 The second identity follows with  $q \simeq 4$  and  $n_1 \simeq 10 \text{ cm}^{-3}$  and  $\tau_{i0} =$   
 940  $\tau_i(p_{i0}) = 10^8 \text{ s}$  and  $p_{i0} = p(100 \text{ MeV})$ . The standard period  $\tau_{SN}$  might  
 941 be quantified by:  $\tau_{SN} \simeq 10^{10} \text{ s}$ .

942 Now we try to obtain a reasonably well supported value for the di-  
 943 mension  $r_0$  within the above derived calculation. Going back to Eq. (35)  
 944 one first finds:

$$\left(r \kappa_{\perp} \frac{\partial f}{\partial r}\right)_{R_a} \simeq R_a \kappa_{\perp} \frac{f_0 - f_{R_a}}{R_a} = \pi r_0^2 \frac{f_0}{\tau_e} \quad (40)$$

945 from which with the help of Eq. (36) one furthermore derives

$$\pi r_0^2 = \kappa_{\perp} \tau_e \frac{f_0 - f_{R_a}}{f_0} = \kappa_{\perp} \tau_e \left[1 - 1 + \frac{\pi r_0^2}{\tau_e \kappa_{\perp}} \ln\left(\frac{R_a}{r_0}\right)\right] \quad (41)$$

946 simply requiring  $r_0 = R_a/\exp(1)$ .

947 With help of Eq. (39) one now can use Eq. (38) to display the  
 948 spectral flux intensity of GCRs as function of the off axis-distance  $r$   
 949 from the axis of the galactic arms.

950 Based on formula (38) one can estimate the variation of the galactic  
 951 cosmic ray spectra along the trajectory of the Sun, in particular inside  
 952 and outside galactic spiral arms. In a first step, we compute an arm  
 953 spectrum from the expression

$$j_a(r_0, p) = j(r_{\odot}, p) \left[1 - \frac{\pi r_0^2}{\tau_e} \left(\frac{1}{\kappa_{a\perp}} \ln\left(\frac{R_a}{r_0}\right) + \frac{1}{\kappa_{i\perp}} \ln\left(\frac{r_{\odot}}{R_a}\right)\right)\right]^{-1} \quad (42)$$

954 assuming that the present-day local interstellar spectrum derived from  
 955 observations can be represented as (Reinecke et al., 1993)

$$j(r_{\odot}, p) = p^2 f(r_{\odot}, p) = \frac{12,41 \text{ v}/c}{(E_k + 0.5 E_0)^{2.6}} \text{ part./m}^2/\text{s}/\text{srad}/\text{MeV} \quad (43)$$

956 where  $v$  is the speed of a proton with kinetic energy  $E_k$  in GeV and  $E_0$   
 957 is the proton rest energy in GeV.

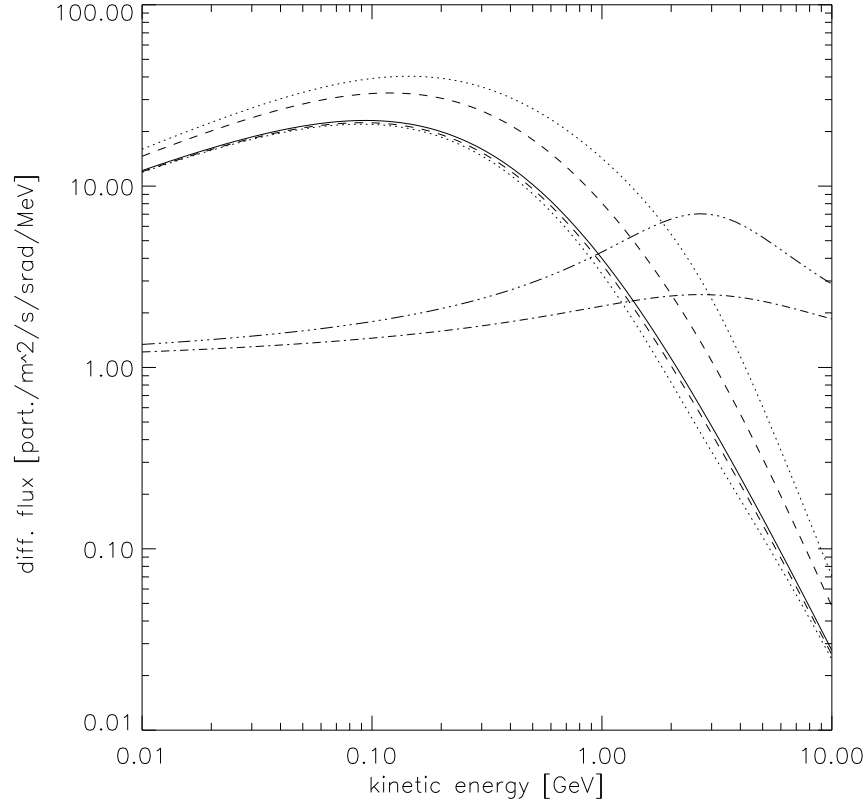


Figure 7. Galactic cosmic ray spectra inside and outside galactic spiral arms: the solid line gives the present-day spectrum according to Reinecke et al. (1993), the upper dashed line is the arm spectrum computed from formula 45 assuming that the Sun is located 1 kpc outside the next main spiral arm, the lower dashed line shows the spectrum in the middle between two arms, and the dash-dotted line is the ratio of the arm to the interarm spectrum for a spiral arm radius of  $R_a=0.35$  kpc,  $r_0=0.1$  kpc,  $\kappa_{i\perp} = 3 \cdot 10^{28}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/s, and  $\kappa_{a\perp} = 0.1\kappa_{i\perp}$ , and  $\tau_e = 7.1 \cdot 10^6$  a. The other lines give the corresponding spectra for a 20% wider spiral arm.

958 For the present location of the Sun relative the next main spiral arm  
 959 with radius  $R_a=0.35$  kpc we use  $r_\odot=1$  kpc. Interpreting the interarm  
 960 diffusion coefficient as that one considered in galactic propagation mod-  
 961 els we select a typical value of  $\kappa_{i\perp} = 3 \cdot 10^{28}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/s. For the diffusion  
 962 coefficient inside an arm we adopt  $\kappa_{a\perp} = 0.1\kappa_{i\perp}$  corresponding to about  
 963 three times higher turbulence level inside an arm than outside.

964 As we are computing spectral rather than just total flux variations,  
 965 we have to take into account the dependence of the diffusion on rigidity  
 966  $P$ . We use

$$\kappa_{i\perp} = 1.5 \left( \frac{P}{P_0} \right)^\xi ; \quad \xi = \frac{aP + bP_0}{P + P_0} \quad (44)$$

967 which avoids the spectral break of the expression given by Büsching  
 968 et al. (2005) and approximate the latter with the values  $a = 0.51$  and  
 969  $b = -0.39$ .

970 Because the time scale  $\tau_e$  resulting from Eq. (41) is even shorter  
 971 than  $\tau_{SN}$ , its use in Eq. (38) would not be consistent with the diffusion  
 972 time scale  $R_a^2/\kappa_{a\perp} = 7.1 \cdot 10^6$  yr, which we therefore use instead of  $\tau_e$ .

973 The resulting arm spectrum is shown as the upper dashed line  
 974 in Fig. 7. From the latter we subsequently computed the spectrum  
 975 approximately in the middle between to spiral arm from

$$j_i(r_m, p) = j(r_a, p) \left[ 1 - \frac{\pi r_0^2}{\tau_e} \left( \frac{1}{\kappa_{a\perp}} \ln \left( \frac{R_a}{r_0} \right) + \frac{1}{\kappa_{i\perp}} \ln \left( \frac{r_m}{R_a} \right) \right) \right] \quad (45)$$

976 with  $r_m=3$  kpc resulting in the lower dashed curve in the figure. The  
 977 dotted lines are at the same locations inside and outside an spiral  
 978 arm but for a 20% greater  $R_a$ . That there is not much variation of  
 979 the spectra in the interarm region is consistent with the rather high  
 980 diffusion coefficient which cannot result in strong modulation over a  
 981 few kpc.

982 Obviously, we obtain the expected variation of factors two to seven  
 983 depending on parameters, compare with the chapter 6. In our approach,  
 984 however, this variation is computed as a function of kinetic energy, see  
 985 the dash-dotted lines in the Fig. 7. Interestingly, the maximum vari-  
 986 ation occurs at around 3 GeV, which means that also the modulated  
 987 spectra at Earth should exhibit a variation. This modulation of the  
 988 interstellar spectra within the heliosphere is the subject of the following  
 989 part, while the interactions of CRs in the atmosphere are described in  
 990 part VI.



991

## Part IV

992

# Heliospheric Modulation



993 **8. Propagation of Cosmic Rays inside the Heliosphere**

994 8.1. SOLAR ACTIVITY: 11-YEAR AND 22-YEAR CYCLES IN COSMIC  
995 RAYS

996 In the heliosphere three main populations of cosmic rays, defined as  
997 charged particles with energies larger than 1 MeV, are found. They  
998 are: (1) Galactic cosmic rays, mainly protons and some fully ionized  
999 atoms, with a spectral peak for protons at about 2 GeV at Earth.  
1000 (2) The anomalous component, which is accelerated at the solar wind  
1001 termination shock after entering the heliosphere as neutral atoms that  
1002 got singly ionized. For a review of these aspects, see Fichtner (2001). (3)  
1003 The third population is particles of mainly solar origin, which may get  
1004 additionally accelerated by interplanetary shocks. A prominent strong  
1005 electron source of up to 50 MeV is the Jovian magnetosphere, with the  
1006 Saturnian magnetosphere much less pronounced.

1007 We are protected again CRs by three well-known space “frontiers”,  
1008 the first one arguably the less appreciated of the three: (1) The solar  
1009 wind and the accompanying relatively turbulent heliospheric magnetic  
1010 field extending to distances of more than 500 AU in the equatorial plane  
1011 and to more than 250 AU in the polar plane. The heliospheric volume  
1012 may oscillate significantly with time depending on solar activity, and  
1013 where the solar system is located in the galaxy, see part V. (2) The  
1014 Earth’s magnetic field, which is not at all uniform, e.g. large changes in  
1015 the Earth’s magnetic field are presently occurring over southern Africa.  
1016 This means that significant changes in the cut-off rigidity at a given  
1017 position occur. These changes seem sufficiently large over the past 400  
1018 years that the change in CRF impacting the Earth may approximate  
1019 the relative change in flux over a solar cycle (Shea and Smart, 2004).  
1020 The magnetosphere also withstands all the space weather changes that  
1021 the Sun produces, and can reverse its magnetic polarity on the long-  
1022 term. (3) The atmosphere with all its complex physics and chemistry.  
1023 The cosmic ray intensity decreases exponentially with increasing at-  
1024 mospheric pressure. The Sun contributes significantly to atmospheric  
1025 changes through, e.g. variations in solar irradiance, and variations in  
1026 the Earth’s orbit (Milankovitch cycles).

1027 The dominant and the most important variability time scale re-  
1028 lated to solar activity is the 11-year cycle. This quasi-periodicity is  
1029 convincingly reflected in the records of sunspots since the early 1600’s  
1030 and in the GCR intensity observed at ground and sea level since the  
1031 1950’s when neutron monitors (NMs) were widely deployed, especially  
1032 as part of the International Geophysical Year (IGY). These monitors  
1033 have been remarkably reliable, with good statistics, over five full 11-year

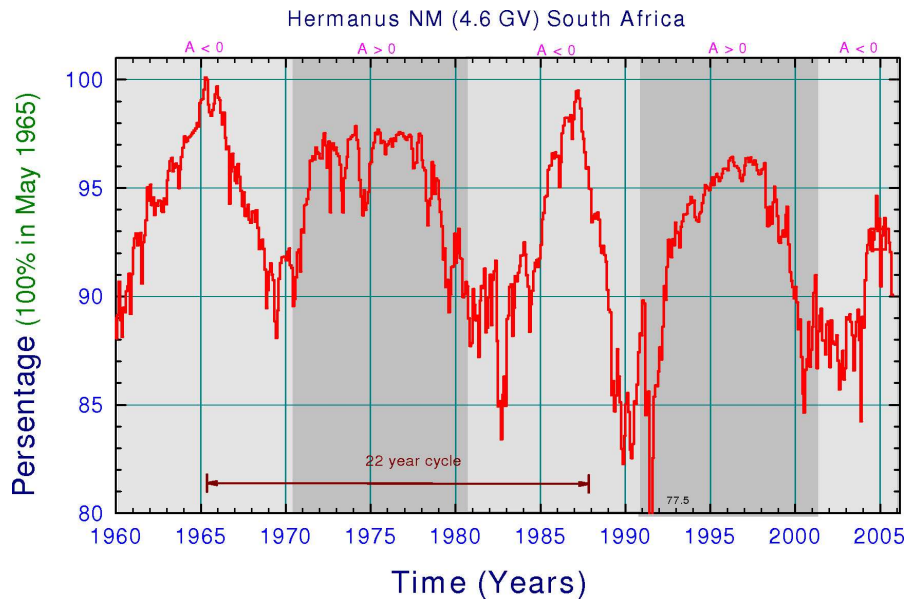


Figure 8. Cosmic ray flux measured by the Hermanus NM (at sea-level with a cut-off rigidity of 4.6 GV) in South Africa. Note the 11-year and 22-year cycles.

1034 cycles. An example of this 11-year cosmic ray cycle is shown in Fig. 8,  
 1035 which is the flux measured by the Hermanus NM in South Africa. The  
 1036 intensity is corrected for atmospheric pressure to get rid of seasonal  
 1037 and daily variations. This means that atmospheric pressure must also  
 1038 be measured very accurately at every NM station.

1039 In Fig. 8 another important cycle, the 22-year cycle, is shown. This  
 1040 cycle is directly related to the reversal of the solar magnetic field during  
 1041 each period of extreme solar activity and is revealed in CR modulation  
 1042 as the alternating flat and sharp profiles of consecutive solar mini-  
 1043 mum modulation epochs when the CR intensity becomes a maximum  
 1044 (minimum modulation). The causes and the physics of the 11-year and  
 1045 22-year cycles will be discussed below, but first a short discussion in  
 1046 the context of this paper will be given about other variabilities related  
 1047 to CRs in the heliosphere.

1048 Short periodicities are evident in NM and other cosmic ray data,  
 1049 e.g. the 25–27-day variation owing to the rotational Sun, and the daily  
 1050 variation owing to the Earth’s rotation. These variations seldom have  
 1051 magnitudes of more than 1% with respect to the previous quite times.  
 1052 The well-studied corotating effect is caused mainly by interaction re-  
 1053 gions (CIRs) created when a faster solar wind overtakes a previously  
 1054 released slow solar wind. They usually merge as they propagate out-  
 1055 wards to form various types of interaction regions, the largest ones



1056 are known as global merged interaction regions - GMIRs (Burlaga  
 1057 et al., 1993). Such a GMIR caused the very large cosmic ray decrease  
 1058 in 1991, shown in Fig. 8. They are related to what happened to the  
 1059 solar magnetic field at some earlier stage and are linked to coronal  
 1060 mass ejections (CMEs), which are always prominent with increased  
 1061 solar activity but dissipate completely during solar minimum. They  
 1062 propagate far outward in the heliosphere with the solar wind speed,  
 1063 even beyond the solar wind termination shock around 90–95 AU. Al-  
 1064 though CIRs may be spread over a large region in azimuthal angle,  
 1065 they cannot cause long-term periodicities on the scale (amplitude) of  
 1066 the 11 year cycle. An isolated GMIR may cause a decrease similar  
 1067 in magnitude than the 11-year cycle but it usually lasts only several  
 1068 months to about a year. A series or train of GMIRs, on the other hand,  
 1069 may contribute significantly to modulation during periods of increased  
 1070 solar activity, in the form of large discrete steps, increasing the overall  
 1071 amplitude of the 11-year cycle (le Roux and Potgieter, 1995). The Sun  
 1072 also occasionally accelerates ions to high energies but with a highly  
 1073 temporal and anisotropic nature, which are known as solar energetic  
 1074 particle (SEP) events.

1075 The 11-year and 22-year cycles are modulated by longer term vari-  
 1076 ability on time scales from decades to centuries, perhaps even longer.  
 1077 There are indications of periods of 50–65 years and 90–130 years, also  
 1078 for a periodicity of about 220 and 600 years. It is not yet clear whether  
 1079 these variabilities should be considered “perturbations”, stochastic in  
 1080 nature or truly time-structured to be figured as superpositions of sev-  
 1081 eral periodic processes. Cases of strong “perturbations” of the con-  
 1082 secutive 11-year cycles are the “grand minima” in solar activity, with  
 1083 the prime example the Maunder Minimum (1645–1715) when sunspots  
 1084 almost completely disappeared. Assuming the solar magnetic field to  
 1085 have vanished or without any reversals during the Maunder minimum  
 1086 would be an oversimplification as some studies already seem to illus-  
 1087 trate (Caballero-Lopez et al., 2004; Scherer and Fichtner, 2004). The  
 1088 heliospheric modulation of CRs could have continued during this period  
 1089 but much less pronounced (with a small amplitude). It is reasonable  
 1090 to infer that less CMEs, for example, occurred so that the total flux of  
 1091 CRs at Earth then should have been higher than afterwards. However,  
 1092 to consider the high levels of sunspot activity for the last few 11-year  
 1093 cycles as unprecedented is still inconclusive. From Fig. 8 follows that  
 1094 the maximum levels of CRs seem to gradually decrease.

1095 The CRF is also not expected to be constant along the trajectory  
 1096 of the solar system in the galaxy. Interstellar conditions, even locally,  
 1097 should therefore differ significantly over long time-scales, for example,  
 1098 when the Sun moves in and out of a spiral arm (Shaviv, 2003a, see also

1099 part III). The CRF at Earth is therefore expected to be variable over  
 1100 time scales of  $10^5$  to  $10^9$  years (e.g. Scherer, 2000, Scherer et al., 2004,  
 1101 and the references therein).

1102 It is accepted that the concentration of  $^{10}\text{Be}$  nuclei in polar ice  
 1103 exhibits temporal variations in response to changes in the flux of the  
 1104 primary CRs (Beer et al., 1990, Masarik and Beer, 1999, and references  
 1105 therein). McCracken et al. (2002, 2004) showed that the  $^{10}\text{Be}$  response  
 1106 function has peaked near 1.8 GeV/nucleon since 1950. They also claim  
 1107 that the NM era represents the most extreme cosmic ray modulation  
 1108 events over the past millennium and that this period is not the typical  
 1109 condition of the heliosphere. There is the hypothesis that short-term  
 1110 (one month or less) increases in the nitrate component of polar ice  
 1111 are the consequence of SEPs (Shea et al., 1999). The observed concen-  
 1112 tration of  $^{10}\text{Be}$  is also determined by both production and transport  
 1113 processes in the atmospheric, and a terrestrial origin for many of the  
 1114 noticeable enhancements in  $^{10}\text{Be}$  is possible, a major uncertainty that  
 1115 inhibits the use of cosmogenic isotopes for the quantitative determina-  
 1116 tion of the time variations of galactic CRs on the same scales for which  
 1117  $^{10}\text{Be}$  is available.

1118 Exploring cosmic ray modulation over time scales of hundreds of  
 1119 years and during times when the heliosphere was significantly differ-  
 1120 ent from the present epoch is a very interesting development. Much  
 1121 work is still needed to make the apparent association (correlations)  
 1122 more convincing, being very complex is well recognized, than what e.g.  
 1123 McCracken et al. (2004) and Usoskin and Mursula (2003) discussed.  
 1124 However, the association between the  $^{10}\text{Be}$  maxima and low values of  
 1125 the sunspot number is persuasive for the Maunder and Dalton minima.

## 1126 8.2. CAUSES OF THE 11- AND 22-YEAR MODULATION CYCLES

1127 Although there is a large number of solar activity indices, the sunspot  
 1128 number is the most widely used index. From a CR modulation point  
 1129 of view, sunspots are not very useful, because the large modulation ob-  
 1130 served at Earth is primarily caused by what occurs, in three-dimensions,  
 1131 between the outer boundary (heliopause) and the Earth (or any other  
 1132 observation point). In this sense the widely used “force-field” modula-  
 1133 tion model (e.g. Caballero-Lopez and Moraal, 2004) is very restricted,  
 1134 ignoring all the important latitudinal modulation effects e.g., perpen-  
 1135 dicular diffusion, gradient and curvature drifts.

1136 Our present understanding of cosmic ray modulation is based on  
 1137 the cosmic ray transport equation (1). For this equation, with a full  
 1138 description of the main modulation mechanisms and the main physics  
 1139 behind them, the reader is referred to Potgieter (1995, 1998) and Fer-

1140 reira and Potgieter (2004), and the references therein, for more details  
1141 see section 5. The individual mechanisms are well-known but how  
1142 they combine to produce cosmic ray modulation, especially with in-  
1143 creasing solar activity, is still actively studied. Basically it works as  
1144 follows. GCRs scatter from the irregularities in the heliospheric mag-  
1145 netic field as they attempt to diffuse from the heliospheric boundary  
1146 toward the Earth. With these irregularities frozen into the solar wind,  
1147 the particles are convected outward at the solar wind speed. In the  
1148 process, they experience adiabatically energy losses, which for nuclei  
1149 can be quite significant. Gradient and curvature drift is the fourth  
1150 major mechanism, and gets prominent during solar minimum condi-  
1151 tions when the magnetic field becomes globally well structured. In the  
1152  $A > 0$  drift cycle (see Fig. 8) the northern field points away from  
1153 the Sun, consequently positively charged particles drift mainly from  
1154 high heliolatitudes toward the equatorial plane and outward primarily  
1155 along the current sheet, giving the typical flat intensity-time profiles.  
1156 The current (neutral) sheet separates the field in two hemispheres and  
1157 becomes progressively inclined and wavy, due to solar rotation, with  
1158 increasing solar activity (Smith, 2001). The extent of inclination or  
1159 “tilt angle” changes from about  $10^\circ$  at solar minimum to  $75^\circ$  at solar  
1160 maximum (theoretically  $90^\circ$  is possible but the current sheet on the  
1161 Sun becomes unrecognizable long before then; Hoeksema, 1992). In the  
1162  $A < 0$  cycle the drift directions are reversed, so that when positive  
1163 particles drifting inward along the wavy current sheet, the intensity at  
1164 Earth becomes strongly dependent on the tilt angle and consequently  
1165 exhibits a sharp intensity-time profile for about half of the 11-year  
1166 cycle. For negatively charged particles the drift directions reverse so  
1167 that a clear charge-sign dependent effect occurs, a phenomenon that  
1168 has been confirmed by observations from the Ulysses mission for more  
1169 than a solar cycle (Heber et al., 2003). The CRF thus varies in anti-  
1170 correlation with the 11-year solar activity cycle indicating that they are  
1171 indeed modulated as they traverse the heliosphere. The extent of this  
1172 modulation depends on the position and time of the observation, and  
1173 strongly on the energy of the cosmic rays. The 22-year cycle, originating  
1174 from the reversal of the solar magnetic field roughly every 11 years, is  
1175 superimposed on the 11-year cycle with an amplitude less than 50% of  
1176 the 11-year cycle. As shown in Fig. 8, the NM intensity-time profiles  
1177 exhibit the expected peak-like shapes around the solar minima of 1965  
1178 and 1987 ( $A < 0$ ), while around 1954, 1976 and 1998 ( $A > 0$ ) they  
1179 were conspicuously flatter. Shortly after the extraordinary flat profile  
1180 around 1976 was observed, two research groups, in Arizona (Jokipii  
1181 et al., 1977) and in South Africa, quickly recognized that gradient and  
1182 curvature drifts, together with current sheet drifts, could explain these

1183 features (Potgieter and Moraal, 1985, and references therein). After the  
1184 revealing of drifts as a major modulation mechanism, the “tilt angle”  
1185 of the current sheet, being a very good proxy of its waviness which on  
1186 its turn is directly related to solar activity, has become the most useful  
1187 solar activity “index” for cosmic ray studies.

1188 While the cosmic ray intensity at NM energies are higher in  $A < 0$   
1189 cycles at solar minimum than in the  $A > 0$  cycles - see Fig. 8 - the  
1190 situation is reversed for lower energies e.g., for 200 MeV protons, con-  
1191 firmed by spacecraft observations. This requires the differential spectra  
1192 of consecutive solar minima to cross at energies between 1 and 5 GeV  
1193 (Reinecke and Potgieter, 1994). The maxima in these spectra also shift  
1194 somewhat up or down in energy depending on the drift cycle because  
1195 the energy losses are somewhat less during  $A > 0$  cycles than during  
1196  $A < 0$  cycles. Convincing experimental evidence of drift effects followed  
1197 since the 1970’s, e.g. when it was discovered that NM differential spec-  
1198 tra based on latitude surveys showed the 22-year cycle, and when the  
1199 intensity-time profiles of cosmic ray electrons depicted the predicted  
1200 “opposite” profiles. It further turned out that the  $A > 0$  minimum in  
1201 the 1990’s was not as flat as in the 1970’s, by allowing the solar minima  
1202 modulation periods to be less drift dominated, as predicted (Potgieter,  
1203 1995). This fortuitous flat shape during of the 1970’s is therefore not  
1204 entirely owing to drifts but also to the unique unperturbed way in  
1205 which solar activity subsided after the 1969-70 solar maximum. The  
1206 period from 1972–1975 became known as a “mini-cycle”, interestingly  
1207 close to the 5-year cycle that McCracken et al. (2002) reported. It is  
1208 also known that the sharp profiles are consistently asymmetrical with  
1209 respect to the times of minimum modulation, with a faster increase  
1210 in cosmic ray flux before than after the minima (about 4 years to 7  
1211 years, respectively). The 11-year solar cycle thus has an asymmetric  
1212 shape, also evident from “tilt angle” calculations, and should therefore  
1213 be evident in the cosmogenic archives.

1214 In the mid-1990’s, le Roux and Potgieter (1995) illustrated that  
1215 the waviness of the current sheet cannot be considered the only time-  
1216 dependent modulation parameter because large step decreases occurred  
1217 in the observed CR intensities (McDonald et al., 1981). These steps  
1218 are prominent during increased solar activity when the changes in  
1219 the current sheet are no longer primarily responsible for the modu-  
1220 lation. In order to successfully model CR intensities during moderate  
1221 to higher solar activity requires some form of propagating diffusion  
1222 barriers (PDBs). The extreme forms of these diffusion barriers are the  
1223 GMIRs, mentioned above. They also illustrated that a complete 11-year  
1224 modulation cycle could be reproduced by including a combination of  
1225 drifts and GMIRs in a time-dependent model. The addition of GMIRs

1226 convincingly explains the step-like appearance in the observed cosmic  
1227 ray intensities. The periods during which the GMIRs affect long-term  
1228 modulation depend on the radius of the heliosphere, their rate of oc-  
1229 currence, the speed with which they propagate, their amplitude, their  
1230 spatial extent, especially in latitude, and finally also on the background  
1231 turbulence (diffusion coefficients) they encounter. Drifts, on the other  
1232 hand, dominate the solar minimum modulation periods so that during  
1233 an 11-year cycle there always is a transition from a period dominated  
1234 by drifts to a period dominated by diffusive propagating structures.  
1235 During some 11-year cycles these periods of transition happen very  
1236 gradually, during others it can be very quickly, depending on how the  
1237 solar magnetic field transforms from a dominating dipole structure to  
1238 a complex higher order field. For reviews on long-term modulation, see  
1239 e.g. Heber and Potgieter (2000) and Potgieter et al. (2001).

1240 If there is a direct relation between  $^{10}\text{Be}$  concentrations and CRs  
1241 impacting Earth, large decreases like the one in 1991 which reduced  
1242 the flux of relatively high energy significantly, should show up in the  
1243 time-profiles of  $^{10}\text{Be}$ .

1244 A third improvement in our understanding of 11-year and 22-year  
1245 cycles came when Potgieter and Ferreira (2001) generalized the PDBs  
1246 concept by varying also all the relevant diffusion coefficients with an  
1247 11-year cycle, in a fully time-dependent model directly reflecting the  
1248 time-dependent changes in the measured magnetic field magnitude at  
1249 Earth. These changes were propagated outwards at the solar wind speed  
1250 to form effective PDBs throughout the heliosphere, changing with the  
1251 solar cycle. This approach simulated an 11-year modulation cycle suc-  
1252 cessfully for cosmic ray at energies  $> 10$  GeV, but it resulted in far less  
1253 modulation than what was observed at lower energies. They therefore  
1254 introduced the compound approach, which combines the effects of the  
1255 global changes in the heliospheric magnetic field magnitude, related  
1256 to all diffusion coefficients, with global and current sheet drifts in a  
1257 complex manner, not merely approximately proportional to  $1/B$ , with  
1258  $B$  the magnetic field magnitude, to produce realistic time-dependent  
1259 relations between the major modulation parameters (Ferreira and Pot-  
1260 gieter, 2004). This approach has so far provided the most successful  
1261 modeling of the 11-year and 22-year cycles. An example is given in  
1262 Fig. 9, where the 11-year simulation done with the compound numerical  
1263 model is shown compared to the Hermanus NM count rates expressed  
1264 as percentage values for the period of 1980–1992.

1265 This inversion CR-B method is used to derive values of the solar  
1266 magnetic field back in time, after the modulation model is calibrated  
1267 to CR observations, typically for minimum modulation like in May  
1268 1965, and further by assuming a direct relation between CRs and the

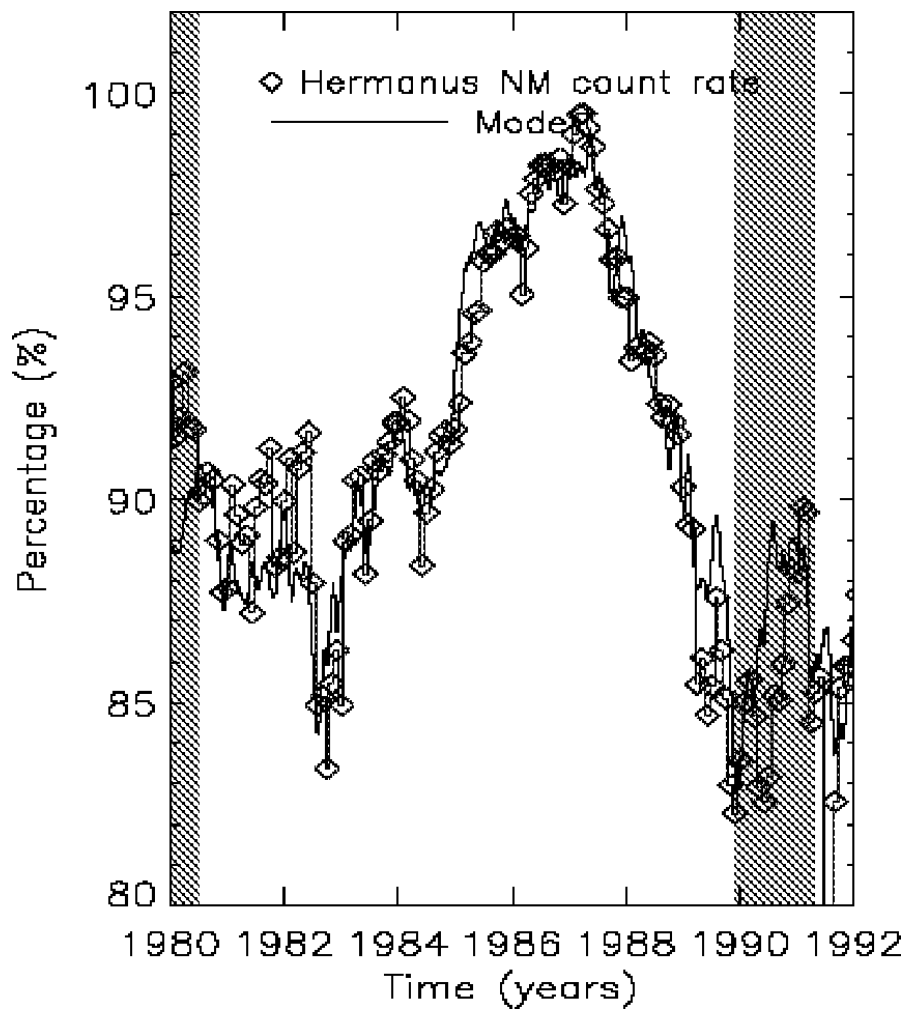


Figure 9. Model computations, based on the compound approach (Ferreira and Potgieter, 2004), shown with the Hermanus NM count rates expressed as percentage values for 1980–1992. Shaded areas indicate when the solar magnetic field polarity was not well defined.

1269 long-term cosmogenic isotope time-profiles. This produces interesting  
 1270 results but further investigation is required because these computations  
 1271 are highly model dependent. It is apparent that for the reconstruction  
 1272 of sunspot numbers from the rate of cosmogenic isotopes, one needs to  
 1273 take into account drift effects described above. Using sunspot numbers  
 1274 as a proxy for the long-term changes in the interplanetary magnetic  
 1275 field over long periods of time and hence the cosmic ray intensity is not  
 1276 reasonable.

1277 The structural features and geometry of the heliosphere, including  
 1278 the solar wind termination shock, the heliosheath and heliopause, es-  
 1279 pecially their locations, also influence the cosmic ray fluxes at Earth.  
 1280 This is the topic of the next section. Together with these features, one  
 1281 has to take into account the possible variability of the local interstellar  
 1282 spectrum for the various cosmic ray species as the heliosphere moves  
 1283 around the galactic center as discussed in part III. The impact of these  
 1284 global heliospheric features on very long-term cosmic ray modulation  
 1285 will be intensively studied in future, with the interest already being  
 1286 enhanced by the recent encounter (Stone et al., 2005) of the solar wind  
 1287 termination shock of the Voyager 1 spacecraft.

## 1288 **9. Effects of the Heliospheric Structure and the Heliopause** 1289 **on the Intensities of Cosmic Rays at Earth**

1290 As the heliosphere moves through interstellar space, various changes  
 1291 in its environment could influence and change its structure. In this  
 1292 section the purpose is to show how changes in the geometrical structure  
 1293 of the heliosphere can affect the modulation of cosmic rays at Earth  
 1294 from a test particle model point of view. The next two subsections  
 1295 will discuss the hydrodynamic point of view. The main focus will be  
 1296 on the modulation effects of the outer heliospheric structures: (1) The  
 1297 solar wind termination shock (TS) where charged particles are getting  
 1298 re-accelerated to higher energies. (2) The outer boundary (heliopause)  
 1299 where the local interstellar spectra (LIS) of different particle species  
 1300 are encountered; and (3) the heliosheath, the region between the TS  
 1301 and the heliopause. The TS is described as a collisionless shock, i.e.  
 1302 a discontinuous transition from supersonic to subsonic flow speeds of  
 1303 the solar wind, in order for the solar wind ram pressure to match the  
 1304 interstellar thermal pressure, accompanied by discontinuous increases  
 1305 in number density, temperature and pressure inside the heliosheath.  
 1306 The heliopause is a contact discontinuity; a surface in the plasma  
 1307 through which no mass flow occurs, and which separates the solar and  
 1308 interstellar plasmas. For a review of these features, see Zank (1999) and  
 1309 also part V.

1310 With the recent crossing of the TS by the Voyager 1 spacecraft at  
 1311  $\approx 94$  AU a compression ratio, between the upstream and downstream  
 1312 solar wind plasmas, was measured between  $\approx 2.6$  (Stone et al., 2005)  
 1313 and  $\approx 3$  (Burlaga et al., 2005). This implies that the TS is rather weak,  
 1314 as assumed in our modeling. The TS may move significantly outwards  
 1315 and inwards over a solar cycle (Whang et al., 2004). Many factors  
 1316 influence the position of the heliopause, making it less certain, but it

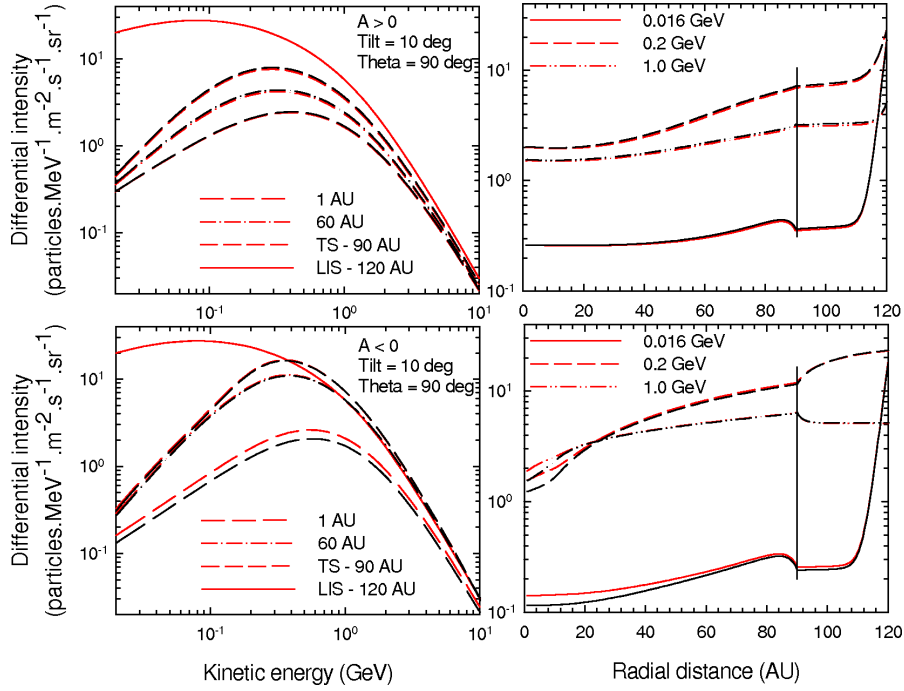


Figure 10. Solutions for a symmetric (red curves) and an asymmetric heliosphere (black curves) shown for the nose region ( $\alpha = 20^\circ$ ), for solar minimum conditions ( $\alpha = 90^\circ$ ), and for the  $A > 0$  polarity cycle (top panels) and the  $A < 0$  polarity cycle (bottom panels), respectively. Left panels: Energy spectra at radial distances of 1 AU, 60 AU, at the TS position and at the LIS position. Right panels: Differential intensities as a function of radial distance at energies of 16 MeV, 200 MeV, and 1 GeV, respectively. Here  $r_s = 90$  AU and  $r_{HP} = 120$  AU for both heliospheric shapes, but only in the nose direction, for the asymmetrical shape  $r_s = 100$  AU and  $r_{HP} = 180$  AU in the tail direction. The LIS is specified at  $r_{HP}$ . (From Langner and Potgieter 2005b).

1317 is probably at least 30–50 AU beyond the TS in the nose direction,  
 1318 the region in which the heliosphere is moving, but significantly larger  
 1319 in the tail direction of the heliosphere, because the dimensions of the  
 1320 heliosphere should be affected by its relative motion through the local  
 1321 interstellar medium (Scherer and Fahr, 2003; Zank and Müller, 2003).  
 1322 The configuration and position of the TS and the heliopause will also  
 1323 change if the heliosphere would move in and out of a denser region in  
 1324 the interstellar medium, like a crossing of the galactic spiral arm.

1325 The effects on the intensities of CRs at Earth of some assumptions  
 1326 and unknowns in heliospheric modeling are shown in this part; these  
 1327 effects may just as well be interpreted as caused by changes in the local  
 1328 interstellar space.



1329 9.1. MODULATION MODELS

1330 Modulation models are based on the numerical solution of the time-  
 1331 dependent CR transport equation (Parker, 1965), see also section 5.  
 1332 The details of the model used to obtain the results shown below, were  
 1333 discussed by Langner et al. (2003) and Langner and Potgieter (2005c).  
 1334 Eq. (1) was solved time-dependently as a combined diffusive shock  
 1335 acceleration and drift modulation model, neglecting any azimuthal de-  
 1336 pendence. The heliospheric magnetic field (HMF) was assumed to have  
 1337 a basic Archimedian geometry in the equatorial plane, but was mod-  
 1338 ified in the polar regions similar to the approach of Jokipii and Kota  
 1339 (1989). The solar wind was assumed to be radially outward, but with  
 1340 a latitudinal dependence. The current sheet tilt angle  $\alpha$  was assumed  
 1341 to represent solar minimum modulation conditions when  $\alpha = 10^\circ$ , and  
 1342 solar maximum when  $\alpha = 75^\circ$ , for both the magnetic polarity cycles,  
 1343 respectively called  $A > 0$  (e.g.  $\approx 1990$ – $2001$ ) and  $A < 0$  (e.g.  $1980$ –  
 1344  $1990$ ). The position of the outer modulation boundary (heliopause) was  
 1345 assumed at  $r_{HP} = 120$  AU, except where explicitly indicated, where  
 1346 the proton LIS of Strong et al. (2000) was specified, or the interstellar  
 1347 spectra of Moskalenko et al. (2002, 2003) for boron (B) and carbon (C).  
 1348 The position of the TS was assumed at  $r_s = 90$  AU, with a compression  
 1349 ratio  $s = 3.2$  and a shock precursor scale length of  $L = 1.2$  AU (Langner  
 1350 et al., 2003), except where explicitly indicated.

1351 9.2. CHANGES IN THE SHAPE OF THE HELIOSPHERE

1352 An example of the effects on galactic CR protons at Earth due to  
 1353 a change in the shape of the heliosphere is illustrated in Fig. 10 for  
 1354 both HMF polarity cycles for  $\alpha = 10^\circ$ . The shape of the heliosphere  
 1355 is changed from symmetrical, with  $r_{HP} = 120$  AU and  $r_s = 90$  AU, to  
 1356 asymmetrical with  $r_{HP} = 120$  AU and  $r_s = 90$  AU in the nose direction  
 1357 and  $r_{HP} = 180$  AU and  $r_s = 100$  AU in the tail direction. In the left  
 1358 panels the energy spectra are shown at radial distances of 1 AU, 60 AU,  
 1359 and at  $r_s$  and  $r_{HP}$ . In the right hand panels the differential intensities  
 1360 are shown at energies of 16 MeV, 200 MeV, and 1 GeV, respectively.  
 1361 The 16 MeV profiles are shown for illustrative purposes only.

1362 The comparison of these spectra illustrates that no significant dif-  
 1363 ference occurs for the  $A > 0$  cycle for solar minimum between a sym-  
 1364 metrical and asymmetrical heliosphere, despite a difference of a factor  
 1365 of 1.5 in the position of the heliopause in the equatorial tail direction;  
 1366 even when the heliopause is moved from 120 AU to 200 AU and the TS  
 1367 from 90 AU to 105 AU. For the  $A < 0$  polarity cycle differences remain  
 1368 insignificant in the nose direction, but they increase towards the Sun  
 1369 with decreasing radial distances, for all latitudes. Changes in the shape

1370 of the heliosphere therefore have an influence on the CR intensities at  
 1371 Earth, although relatively small (Langner and Potgieter, 2005c).

### 1372 9.3. CHANGES IN THE SIZE OF THE HELIOSHEATH

1373 In Fig. 11 the computed spectra for galactic protons are shown for  
 1374 both magnetic polarity cycles and for solar minimum conditions with  
 1375  $\alpha = 10^\circ$ . The spectra and differential intensities are shown at the  
 1376 same distances and energies as in Fig. 11. The LIS is specified first  
 1377 at  $r_{HP} = 120$  AU and then with  $r_{HP} = 160$  AU. All the modulation  
 1378 parameters including the diffusion coefficients were kept the same for  
 1379 both situations. Qualitatively the results for the different heliopause  
 1380 positions look similar, but quantitatively they differ, especially as a  
 1381 function of radial distance. The spectra for  $r_{HP} = 120$  AU in all four  
 1382 panels are higher than for the 160 AU position. The differences between  
 1383 the differential intensities are most prominent for energies  $\leq 1$  GeV and  
 1384 increase with decreasing energy indicative of the wider heliosheath. In  
 1385 the equatorial plane the TS effects are most prominent in the  $A < 0$   
 1386 cycle judged by the amount and at what energies the spectra at 90 AU  
 1387 and even at 60 AU exceed the LIS value. This “excess” effect is reduced  
 1388 when the heliopause is moved further out. As a function of radial  
 1389 distance these effects are quite evident for the chosen energies, e.g.  
 1390 the 0.20 GeV intensities are lower at all radial distances.

1391 The “barrier” effect, the sharp drop in intensities over relatively  
 1392 small radial distances in the outer heliosphere, becomes more promi-  
 1393 nent (covers a larger distance) when the heliopause is moved outward,  
 1394 especially during the  $A > 0$  cycles when it happens over an extended  
 1395 energy range. The width of this modulation “barrier” is dependent  
 1396 on the modulation conditions (diffusion coefficients) close to the outer  
 1397 boundary. For energies  $\leq 200$  MeV most of the modulation happens in  
 1398 the heliosheath for both cycles, but especially because of the barrier  
 1399 covering relatively small distances near the heliopause during the  $A > 0$   
 1400 cycle. For CR intensities at Earth the position of the TS proved to  
 1401 be not as significant as the position of the heliopause (Langner and  
 1402 Potgieter, 2004; Langner and Potgieter, 2005a; Langner and Potgieter,  
 1403 2005b).

### 1404 9.4. CHANGES IN THE TERMINATION SHOCK COMPRESSION RATIO

1405 The modulation obtained with the TS model with respect to the carbon  
 1406 LIS, as a typical example of the modulation of CR nuclei, is shown in  
 1407 the left panels of Fig. 12 Potgieter and Langner (2004) for boron spec-  
 1408 tra, with a detailed discussion. The spectra and differential intensities  
 1409 are now also shown for  $\alpha = 75^\circ$ , for a model with a TS and then

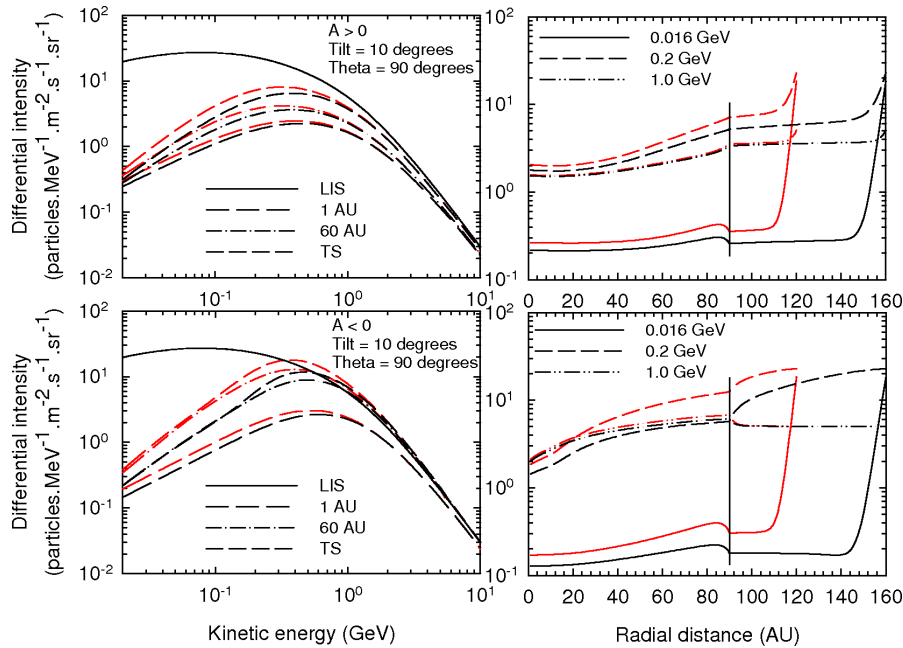


Figure 11. Left panels: Computed differential intensities for galactic protons with  $\alpha = 10^\circ$  as a function of kinetic energy for both polarity cycles, at 1 AU, 60 AU, and the TS location (bottom to top) in the equatorial plane ( $\theta = 90^\circ$ ). Right panels: The corresponding differential intensities as function of radial distance for 0.016, 0.2 and 1.0 GeV, respectively at the same latitude as in the left panels. The TS is at 90 AU, as indicated, with the LIS specified at 120 AU (red lines) and 160 AU (black lines), respectively. (From Langner and Potgieter 2005a).

1410 without a TS, respectively. The modulation of C is clearly affected by  
 1411 incorporating a TS. Note the manner in which the modulation changes  
 1412 from solar minimum to moderate solar maximum activity and how the  
 1413 effects increase with solar activity.

1414 The effect of the TS on the modulation of C is for the larger part  
 1415 of the heliosphere significant; it drastically decreases the intensities at  
 1416 lower energies (e.g. at 100 MeV/nuc) but increases it at higher energies  
 1417 (e.g. at 1 GeV/nuc), as the lower energy particles are being accelerated  
 1418 to higher energies. The adiabatic spectral slopes are also altered in the  
 1419 process. The intensities at low energies are, therefore, lower at Earth  
 1420 with the TS than without it in the  $A > 0$  polarity cycle, but not for the  
 1421  $A < 0$  cycle, because in this cycle the low energy particle population  
 1422 are supplemented by the modulation of the larger population of high  
 1423 energy particles at the TS, emphasizing the role of particle drifts. These  
 1424 differences can be seen at Earth, and it is clear that a change in the  
 1425 compression ratio will have consequences on the intensities at Earth.

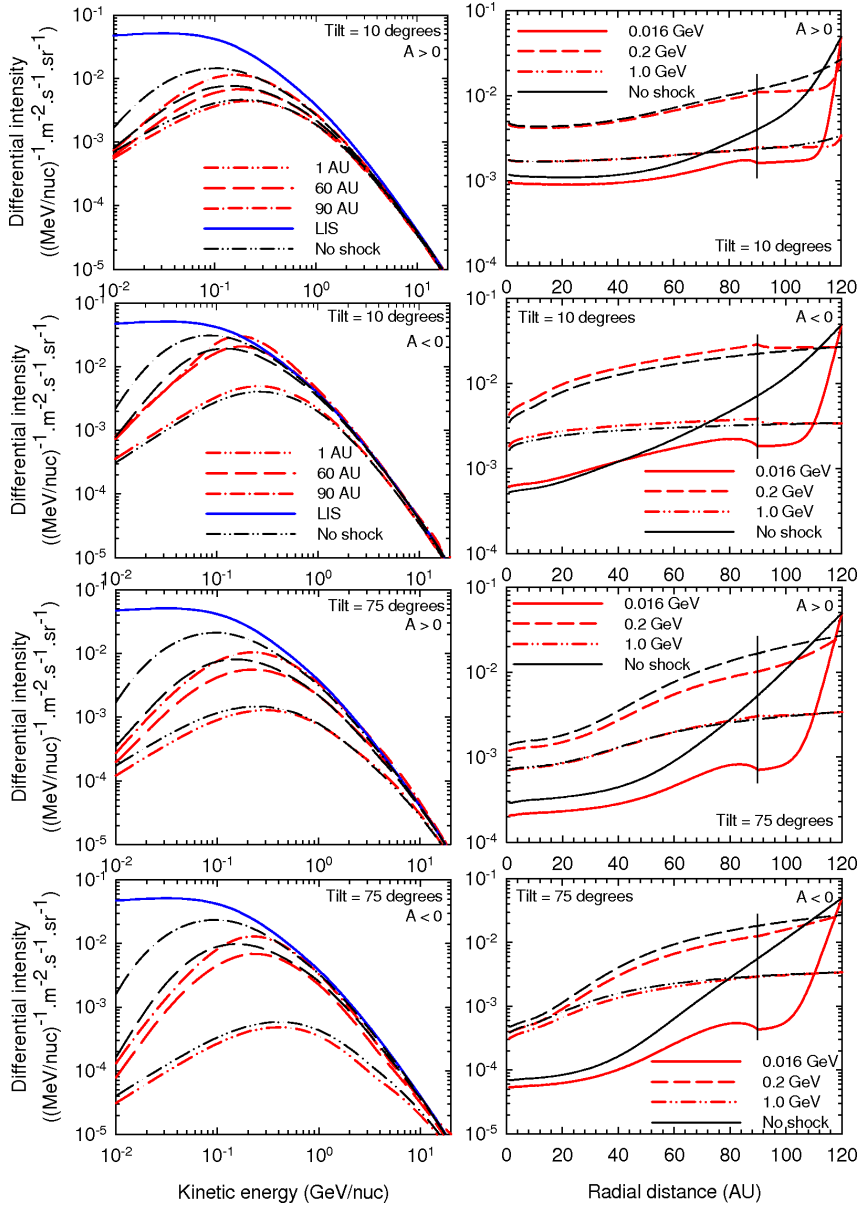


Figure 12. Left panels: Computed spectra for galactic carbon for both polarity cycles, at 1 AU, 60 AU and 90 AU (bottom to top) in the equatorial plane. Right panels: Corresponding differential intensities as a function of radial distance for 0.016, 0.2 and 1.0 GeV, respectively. The TS is at 90 AU, as indicated, with the LIS (blue lines) at 120 AU, with  $\alpha = 10^\circ$  and  $75^\circ$ , respectively. Solutions without a TS are indicated by black lines for the same radial distances and energies. Note the scale differences. (From Potgieter and Langner, 2004).

1426 The differences between the two approaches are most significant with  
 1427  $E \leq 100$  MeV/nuc and  $r \geq 60$  AU. Similar results were found for CR  
 1428 protons and helium (He) (Langner et al., 2003; Langner and Potgieter,  
 1429 2004).

### 1430 9.5. MODULATION IN THE HELIOSHEATH

1431 Also shown in the right panels of Fig. 12 is that the modulation in  
 1432 the heliosheath is an important part of the total modulation for C.  
 1433 Barrier type modulation is caused by the heliosheath as was previously  
 1434 mentioned for galactic protons. It differs significantly for different en-  
 1435 ergies, from almost no effect at high energies to the largest effect at low  
 1436 energies, and with changes in HMF polarity cycle. The TS plays in this  
 1437 regard a prominent role and can be regarded as a main contributor to  
 1438 the barrier modulation effect at low energies. For a discussion of these  
 1439 effects for protons, see Langner et al. (2003).

1440 In Fig. 13 the computed modulation to take place in the heliosheath,  
 1441 between  $r_b$  and  $r_s$ , is compared to what happens between  $r_b$  and 1 AU  
 1442 (LIS to Earth) and between  $r_s$  and 1 AU (TS to Earth). This compari-  
 1443 son is emphasized by showing in this figure the intensity ratios  $j_{LIS}/j_1$ ,  
 1444  $j_{LIS}/j_{90}$  and  $j_{90}/j_1$  for B and C in the equatorial plane for both polarity  
 1445 cycles with  $\alpha = 10^\circ$ . Note that for a few cases the ratios become less  
 1446 than unity. Obviously, all these ratios must converge at a high enough  
 1447 energy where no modulation takes place. According to this figure a  
 1448 significant level of modulation occurs in the heliosheath when  $A > 0$   
 1449 with  $E \leq 200$  MeV/nuc for solar minimum ( $\alpha = 10^\circ$ ). This is also true  
 1450 for  $A < 0$  but at a somewhat lower energy. The level of modulation in  
 1451 the heliosheath decreases significantly for  $E > 200$  MeV/nuc in contrast  
 1452 with that of  $j_{90}/j_1$  for the  $A < 0$  cycle but to a lesser extent for the  
 1453  $A > 0$  cycle. From this it is clear that the heliosheath can play an  
 1454 important role for CR intensities at Earth, because at low energies  
 1455 most of the modulation of CRs happens in this region.

### 1456 9.6. CHANGES IN THE LOCAL INTERSTELLAR SPECTRUM

1457 By comparing the energy spectra and radial dependence of the intensi-  
 1458 ties for the chosen energies in Fig. 14 it can be seen that the modulation  
 1459 for B and C differs as a function of radial distance. This is primarily  
 1460 because of the much steeper spectral slope for the local interstellar  
 1461 spectrum (LIS) below 100 MeV/nuc for B compared to C. This implies  
 1462 that the C modulation should have a much larger radial gradient below  
 1463  $\approx 200$ -500 MeV/nuc in the outer heliosphere than for B. The spectral  
 1464 slopes at low energies change with increasing radial distance as the  
 1465 adiabatic energy loss effect gets less. Despite the rather flat LIS for C

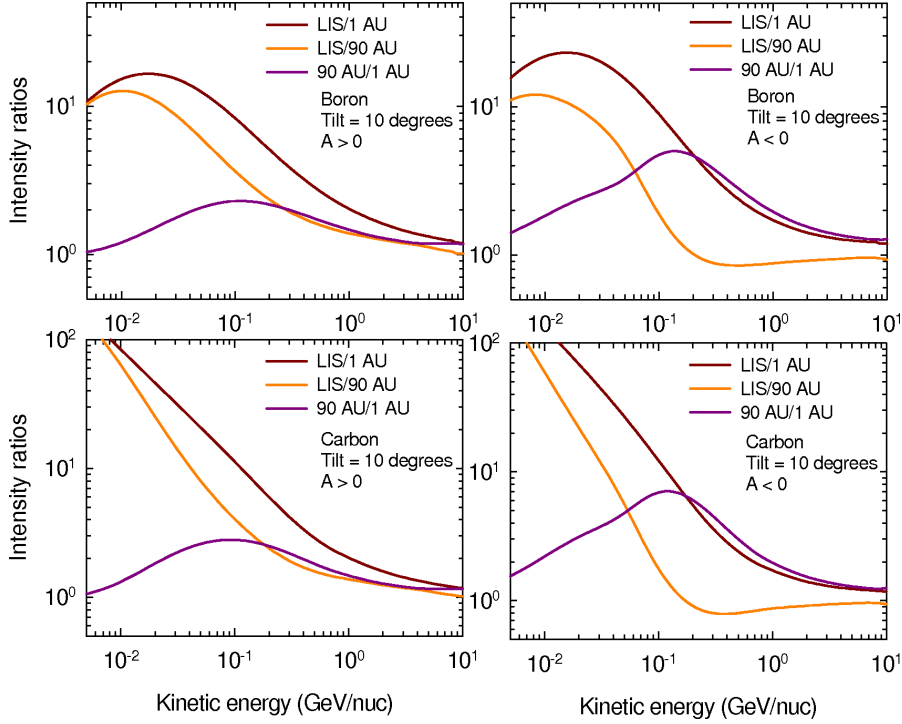


Figure 13. Intensity ratios  $j_{LIS}/j_1$ ,  $j_{LIS}/j_{90}$  and  $j_{90}/j_1$  (120 to 1 AU, 120 to 90 AU and 90 to 1 AU) for boron and carbon as a function of kinetic energy in the equatorial plane with  $\alpha = 10^\circ$ ; left panels: for  $A > 0$ , right panels for  $A < 0$ . Interstellar spectra are considered local interstellar spectra (LIS) at 120 AU and the TS is positioned at 90 AU. Note the scale differences. (From Potgieter and Langner, 2004).

1466 below 100 MeV/nuc, the modulated spectra at 1 AU look very similar  
 1467 for B and C, a characteristic of large adiabatic “cooling”. The computed  
 1468 differential intensities for B and C are also shown at Earth for both  
 1469 polarity cycles compared to B and C observations. These comparisons  
 1470 are shown for two sets of LIS as mentioned in the figure caption. This  
 1471 second approach contains a new, local component to spectra of primary  
 1472 nuclei and is probably closer to what can be considered a LIS. The B  
 1473 to C ratios as functions of kinetic energy are also shown compared to  
 1474 the observations, with the interstellar B/C at 120 AU as a reference  
 1475 (Potgieter and Langner, 2004).

1476 As noted before the spectral shapes at 1 AU are very similar for B  
 1477 and C owing to adiabatic energy losses between 120 AU and 1 AU. This  
 1478 causes a steady B/C below 200-300 MeV/nuc. This ratio will system-  
 1479 atically decrease with increasing radial distances to eventually coincide  
 1480 with the LIS ratios. However, the spectral slopes at 1 AU are slightly  
 1481 different for the two polarity epochs owing to the different particle drift

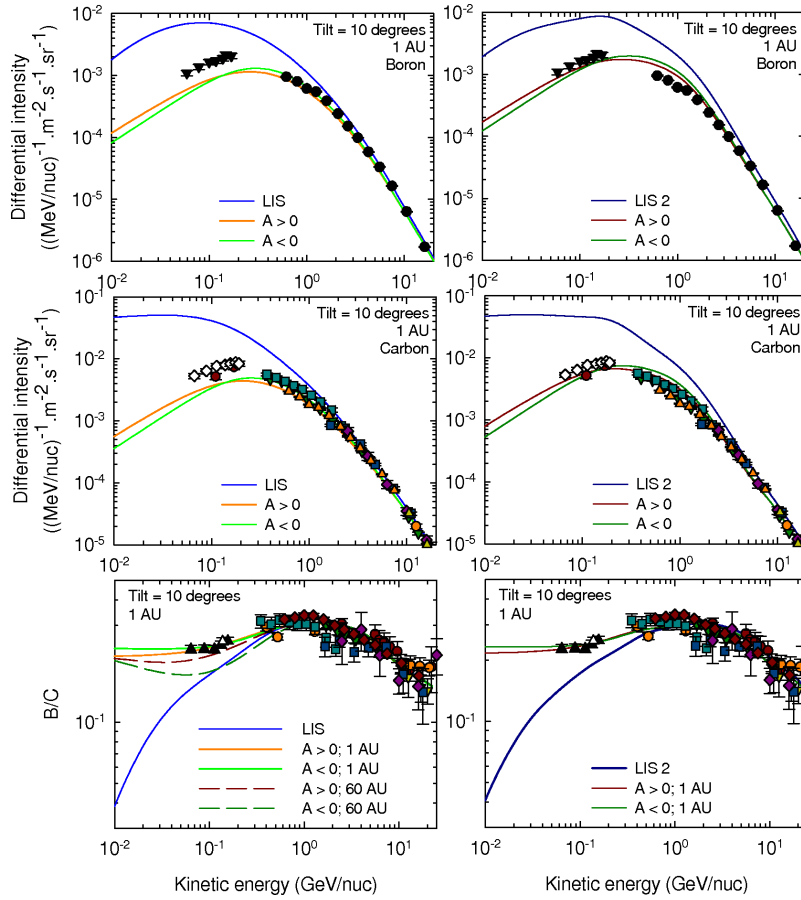


Figure 14. Top and middle panels: Computed differential intensities for boron (top) and carbon (middle) at Earth for both polarity cycles compared to observations. Computations are done with the IS for boron and carbon by Moskalenko et al. (2002) (left panels) and by Moskalenko et al. (2003) (right panels). Bottom panel: B/C as a function of kinetic energy for both polarity cycles with  $\alpha = 10^\circ$  compared to corresponding observations. The computations are compared to the interstellar B/C at 120 AU as a reference (blue lines). The data compilation is taken from Moskalenko et al. (2003). (From Potgieter and Langner, 2004).

1482 directions during the two magnetic polarity cycles. This causes the well-  
 1483 known crossing of the spectra for successive solar minima, seen here  
 1484 between 100–200 MeV/nuc (Reinecke and Potgieter, 1994). The LIS  
 1485 of (Moskalenko et al., 2002) is most reasonable above 500 MeV/nuc,  
 1486 although a more reasonable fit is obtained below 300 MeV/nuc by using  
 1487 the second LIS of (Moskalenko et al., 2003), which from 200 MeV/nuc  
 1488 to  $\approx 4$  GeV/nuc is higher than the previous one. Unfortunately these  
 1489 modified LIS produce modulated spectra that do not represent the

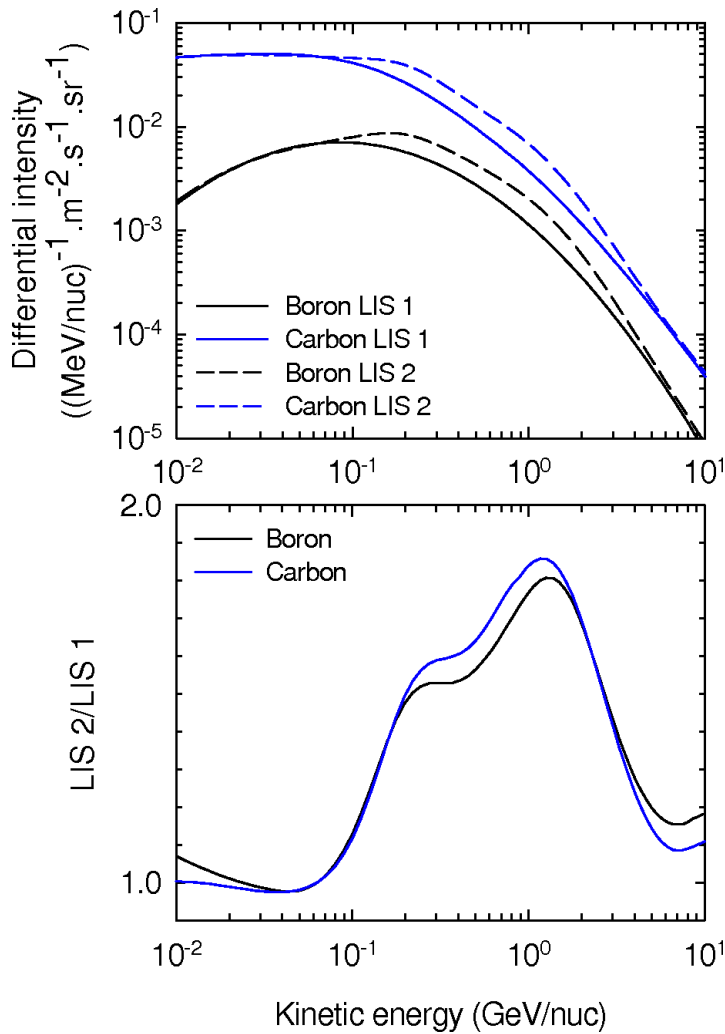


Figure 15. A comparison of the two sets of interstellar spectra for boron (black lines) and carbon (blue lines); lower values (LIS1; solid lines) by Moskalenko et al. (2002), higher values (LIS2- dashed lines) by Moskalenko et al. (2003). The latter contains a local interstellar contribution to spectra of primary nuclei as proposed by Moskalenko et al. (2003) and is probably closer to what can be considered a LIS for carbon. In the lower panel the corresponding ratios (LIS2/LIS1) are shown as a function of energy/nuc. (From Potgieter and Langner, 2004).

1490 observations well between  $\approx 200$  MeV/nuc and  $\approx 1$  GeV/nuc for both B  
 1491 and C, with the fit to the low-energy B/C still in place. This aspect is  
 1492 emphasized in Fig. 15 by showing the two sets of LIS, with the changes  
 1493 introduced by Moskalenko et al. (2003), and the corresponding ratios  
 1494 as a function of energy.



1495        These differences in the intensities at Earth, caused by different local  
1496 interstellar spectra, are therefore a clear indication that even small  
1497 changes in the spectral shape of the LIS can play an important role  
1498 in the measured intensities of CRs at Earth, if it would occur at high  
1499 enough energy not to be hidden by adiabatic energy losses.

1500        Changes in the heliospheric structure and in the heliosheath can  
1501 play a measurable part on the CR intensities at Earth. Qualitatively  
1502 the modulation for B, C, protons, and He are similar, with certainly  
1503 quantitative differences. Although these studies were done with a differ-  
1504 ent compression ratio and position for the TS than what was recently  
1505 observed, the results will qualitatively stay the same. Even though each  
1506 of the discussed changes cause only small effects at Earth, which alone  
1507 may seem insignificant, it is clear that a superposition of changes,  
1508 strongly dependent on energy and on the HMF polarity cycle, may  
1509 cause a significant effect on the intensities of CRs at Earth.



1510

## Part V

1511

# Effects of the Dynamical Heliosphere

1512



1513

## 10. 3D (Magneto-)Hydrodynamic Modelling

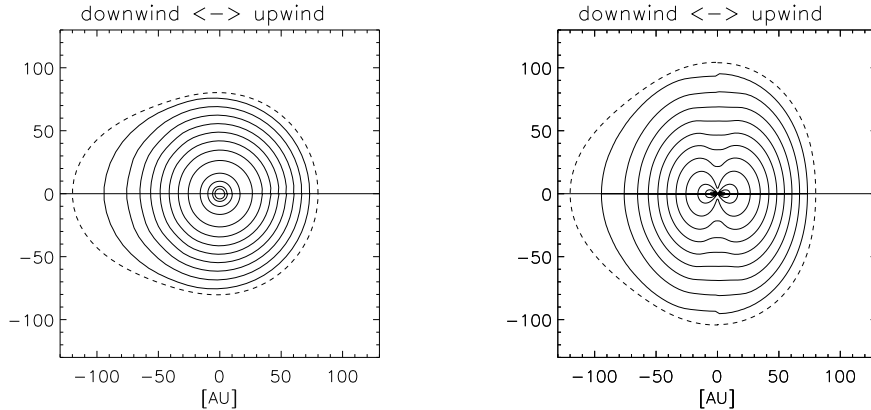
1514 For quantitative studies of interstellar-terrestrial relations it is nec-  
1515 essary to have a model of a three-dimensional heliosphere, which is  
1516 immersed in a dynamic local interstellar medium. There are at least two  
1517 reasons why such model should be three-dimensional. First, a compre-  
1518 hensive and self-consistent treatment of the cosmic ray transport must  
1519 take into account the three-dimensional structure of the turbulent helio-  
1520 spheric plasma and, second, the heliosphere can be in a disturbed state  
1521 for which no axisymmetric description can be justified. The present  
1522 state-of-the-art of the modeling of a dynamic heliosphere with a self-  
1523 consistent treatment of the transport of cosmic rays is reviewed in  
1524 Fichtner (2005). As is pointed out in that paper, the major challenge  
1525 is the development of a three-dimensional hybrid model. This task  
1526 requires, on the one hand, the generalisation of the modeling discussed  
1527 in the following section and, on the other hand, the formulation of  
1528 three-dimensional models of the heliospheric plasma dynamics. The  
1529 fundamental equations are discussed in section 5 for both the cosmic  
1530 ray transport as well as the MHD-fluid equations. In the following we  
1531 discuss different approaches based on these fundamental equations (1)  
1532 to (3).

### 1533 10.1. 3D MODELS WITHOUT COSMIC RAYS

1534 Several three-dimensional models without cosmic rays have been pre-  
1535 sented. Following early work, which is reviewed in Zank (1999), Fichtner  
1536 (2001), Fahr (2004), and Izmodenov (2004), nowadays sophisticated  
1537 MHD models have been developed, see Washimi et al. (2005), Opher  
1538 et al. (2004), Pogorelov (2004), Pogorelov et al. (2004) and Pogorelov  
1539 and Zank (2005). Their results are not discussed further, because this  
1540 review is focused on models containing cosmic rays.

### 1541 10.2. 3D MODELS WITH COSMIC RAYS

1542 So far, a truly dynamical, three-dimensional model for the large-scale  
1543 heliosphere that also includes self-consistently a sophisticated cosmic  
1544 ray transport comprising fully anisotropic diffusion and drifts is still  
1545 missing. For the existing three-dimensional models including the cosmic  
1546 ray transport rather over-simplifying approximations had to be made.  
1547 Common to all these models is their pure hydrodynamical character,  
1548 i.e. the fact that the heliospheric magnetic field is included only kine-  
1549 matically. Further simplifications depend on the type of approach being  
1550 used.



*Figure 16.* The (normalized) spatial distribution of anomalous protons with 31 MeV for the no-drift case (corresponding to solar activity maximum) in a non-spherical heliosphere. Both cuts are containing the upwind-downwind axis (horizontal solid line): the left panel is a cut perpendicular to the symmetry axis of the heliospheric magnetic field and the right panel is a cut containing it. The outermost dashed line indicates the heliospheric shock in these planes. The contours have, from the shock inwards, the values 1, 0.9, 0.8, 0.7, 0.6, 0.5, 0.4, 0.3, 0.2, 0.1, 0.05, 0.01 (taken from Sreenivasan and Fichtner (2001)).

#### 1551 10.2.1. *Models Based on a Kinetic Description of Cosmic Rays*

1552 Those models that include the kinetic cosmic ray transport equation,  
 1553 are not self-consistent by prescribing the heliospheric plasma structure.  
 1554 This has been done, in extension of earlier work, by Sreenivasan and  
 1555 Fichtner (2001), who treated the kinetic, drift-free transport of anoma-  
 1556 lous cosmic rays within a three-dimensionally structured stationary  
 1557 heliosphere with a Parker field and excluded the region beyond the  
 1558 asymmetric termination shock. Despite these simplifications the result-  
 1559 ing spatial cosmic ray distribution (see Fig. 16) gives a first impression  
 1560 of what one should expect quantitatively for the outer heliosphere.

1561 The figure shows the spatial distribution of anomalous protons with  
 1562 a kinetic energy of 31 MeV for a non-spherical heliospheric shock (outer-  
 1563 most dashed line) in the 'equatorial' plane (left), which is perpendicular  
 1564 to the symmetry axis of the heliospheric magnetic field and contains the  
 1565 upwind-downwind axis (horizontal solid line), and in a meridional plane  
 1566 (right) containing both the symmetry axis of the heliospheric magnetic  
 1567 field and the upwind-downwind axis. The shock is elongated in the polar  
 1568 and the downwind direction by factors of 1.3 and 1.5, respectively, as is  
 1569 found with the above-mentioned (M)HD studies. The resulting spectra  
 1570 are compared with those for a spherical heliosphere in Fig. 17.

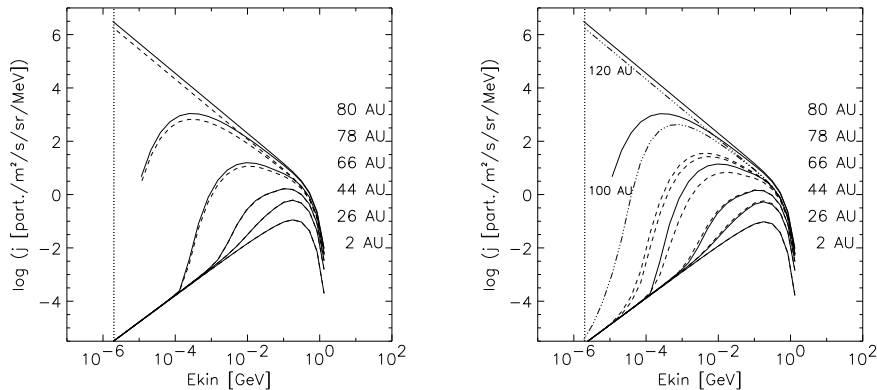


Figure 17. The spectral distribution of anomalous protons in the upwind (solid lines) and downwind (dashed lines) directions for the no-drift case applicable to maximum solar activity. Even for the spherical heliosphere (left panel) the source spectra in the upwind and the downwind direction (uppermost solid and dashed lines) are different due to an assumed variation in the flux of the ACR source population, i.e. the pick-up ions. The right panel is for a non-spherical heliosphere. In both panels the solid and dashed lines indicate (from bottom to top) the spectra at 2, 26, 44, 66, 78 and 80 AU. Note that in the right panel there are two additional (separately labeled) spectra for 100 and 120 AU (dash-dotted lines) due to the downwind elongation of the non-spherical heliosphere. The vertical dotted line indicates  $E_{kin} = 2\text{keV}$  (taken from Sreenivasan and Fichtner, 2001).

1571 From the figures it is obvious that the three-dimensional structure  
 1572 of the heliosphere is manifest in the spatial and spectral distributions  
 1573 of anomalous cosmic rays only in the outer heliosphere beyond about  
 1574 50 AU. Thus, within the framework of the assumptions made for this  
 1575 work, one would not expect any effect of the large-scale heliospheric  
 1576 structure on the spectra at the orbit of the Earth.

1577 This first attempt to incorporate the anisotropic diffusion tensor in  
 1578 a ‘realistically’ 3D-structured heliosphere has, of course, severe short-  
 1579 comings. Some were addressed with 2D models, which are discussed  
 1580 in the following section. Concentrating here on the three-dimensional  
 1581 aspects, a next step was made by Burger and Hitge (2004) computing  
 1582 galactic proton spectra for a non-Parkerian heliospheric magnetic field  
 1583 as suggested by Fisk (1996). Their steady-state model is formulated  
 1584 in a frame corotating with the Sun. Figure 18 gives a comparison of  
 1585 the spectra at the Earth as well as the latitudinal gradients resulting  
 1586 for the Parker field and a hybrid field having Fisk- and Parker-field  
 1587 properties.

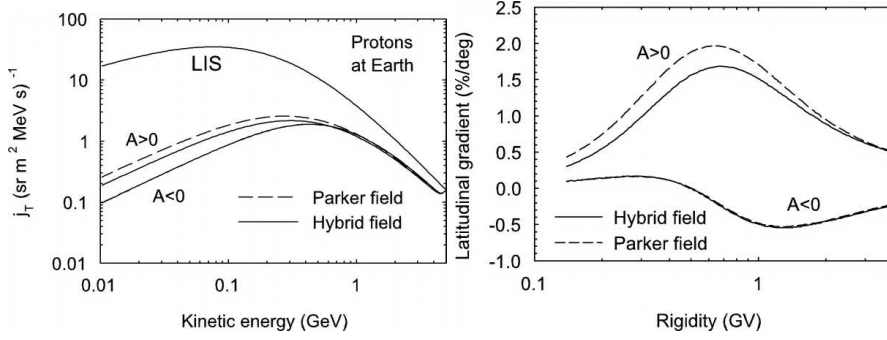


Figure 18. Proton energy spectra at the Earth (left panel) and proton latitudinal gradients as a function of rigidity (right panel) for a Parker field (dashed lines) and the hybrid field (solid lines). The upper two lines are for an  $A > 0$  solar polarity epoch, and the lower two (almost identical) lines are for an  $A < 0$  epoch. The gradients are calculated between  $20^\circ$  and  $90^\circ$  colatitude at a radial distance of 2 AU (taken from Burger and Hitge (2004)).

1588 The finding with highest relevance for the present context is that  
 1589 the hybrid field reduces intensities compared to a Parker field when  
 1590  $qA > 0$ , with the signed particle charge  $q$  and  $\text{sign}(A)$  indicating the  
 1591 two subcycles of the Sun's magnetic cycle. This reduction is stronger at  
 1592 high latitudes than at lower latitudes, and also stronger at low energies  
 1593 than at higher energies. Interestingly, for  $qA < 0$  the global effects of  
 1594 the hybrid field are almost negligible.

1595 In this model, however, the outer boundary of the computational  
 1596 domain was chosen as 50 AU and, thus, the entire outer heliosphere  
 1597 was neglected.

### 1598 10.2.2. Models Based on a Hydrodynamic Description of Cosmic Rays

1599 In order to get closer to a model of cosmic ray transport in a fully  
 1600 dynamic and complete heliosphere Borrmann (2005) developed a three-  
 1601 dimensional hydrodynamic model of heliospheric dynamics (Borrmann  
 1602 and Fichtner, 2005) that self-consistently includes a hydrodynamically  
 1603 treated galactic cosmic ray component, i.e. rather than the full kinetic  
 1604 transport equation 1, it is employing the moment equation

$$\frac{\partial p_{cr}}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot \left( \langle \vec{\kappa} \rangle \nabla p_{cr} \right) - \vec{v}_{sw} \cdot \nabla p_{cr} - \gamma (\nabla \cdot \vec{v}_{sw}) p_{cr} \quad (46)$$

1605 for the cosmic ray pressure

$$p_{cr}(\vec{r}, p, t) = \frac{4\pi}{3} \int p^3 w f(\vec{r}, p, t) dp \quad (47)$$

1606 with the particle speed  $w$ . Here,  $\langle \vec{\kappa} \rangle$  is the momentum-average of  
 1607 the diffusion tensor given in Eq. (2). A typical result for the plasma



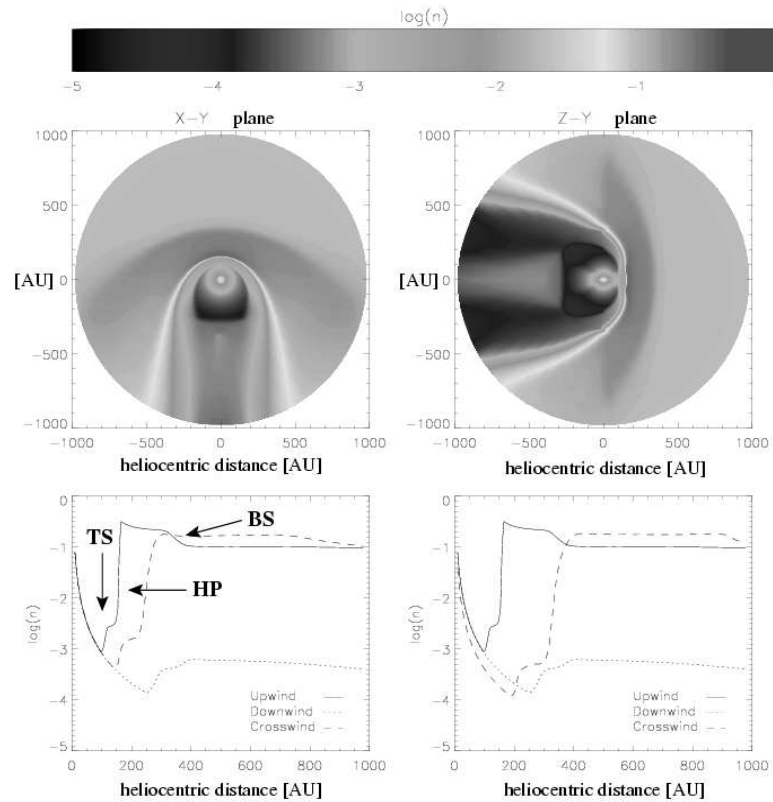


Figure 19. Contour plots of the proton number density in the equatorial ( $X-Y$ ) and a meridional ( $Y-Z$ ) planes along and with the associated number density profiles in the upwind (solid lines), the downwind (dotted lines), the crosswind (dashed lines in the lower left panel), and the polar directions (dashed lines in the lower right panel).

1608 structure of the heliosphere at solar minimum activity is shown in  
 1609 Fig. 19.

1610 The galactic proton distribution at a rigidity of about 0.6 GV for  
 1611 such a configuration is shown in Fig. 20, which is – not surprisingly  
 1612 – qualitatively similar to that shown in Fig. 16. It is quantitatively  
 1613 far more realistic, of course, as the whole heliosphere in particular the  
 1614 heliosheath and the local interstellar medium in the vicinity of the  
 1615 heliopause are fully included.

1616 Again it is found with this study that the cosmic ray intensity at  
 1617 Earth remains unaffected by the large-scale asymmetry of the helio-  
 1618 sphere.

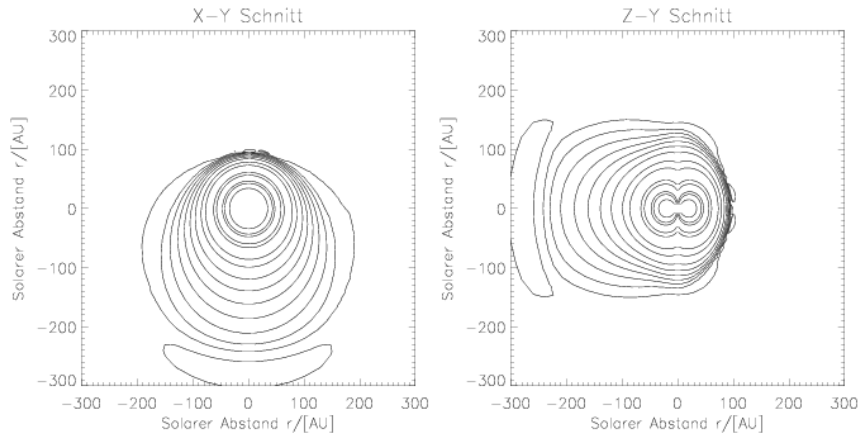


Figure 20. The (normalized) galactic proton distribution for a mean rigidity of 0.6 GV in the equatorial plane (left panel) and the meridional plane containing the heliospheric upwind-downwind axis (right panel). The contour values decrease by 0.1 between 1 (outermost line around the Sun) and 0.1 followed by 0.05, 0.01, 0.005, 0.001, 0.0005 and 0.0001.

1619 This model allows one, however, for the first time, to compute the  
 1620 back reaction of three-dimensional galactic proton distributions on the  
 1621 large-scale structure of the heliosphere. This is illustrated in Figs. 21  
 1622 and Fig. 22. The first gives the density and velocity contours for three  
 1623 different diffusion tensor models as used by Fichtner et al. (1996),  
 1624 Fichtner et al. (2000), and Ferreira et al. (2001).

1625 From these figures it is evident that the effect of galactic cosmic rays  
 1626 on heliospheric structure is limited to the outer downwind heliosphere,  
 1627 where it manifests in a reduction of the heliocentric distance to the  
 1628 termination shock. This translates into the confirmation that the effect  
 1629 of galactic cosmic rays on the heliosphere is probably negligible and that  
 1630 their test particle treatment is well-justified. Note that this is probably  
 1631 not true for anomalous cosmic rays, which are supposedly accelerated  
 1632 at the termination shock and expected to modify the latter (Florinski  
 1633 et al., 2004). This has, however, not yet been studied with a 3D model.

1634 This model by Borrmann (2005) has also been used for studies of  
 1635 the test particle transport of cosmic rays particularly including the  
 1636 heliosheath region, see the previous section and Langner et al. (2005b)  
 1637 and Langner et al. (2005a), where it is shown that, while the helio-  
 1638 spheric asymmetry is not directly showing up in the 1 AU spectra of  
 1639 galactic and anomalous cosmic rays, the absolute levels of the isotropic  
 1640 fluxes are depending on the 3D-structure of the heliosphere.

1641 More involved is an analysis of the consequence of a severely dis-  
 1642 turbed local interstellar medium. While also this has not been studied

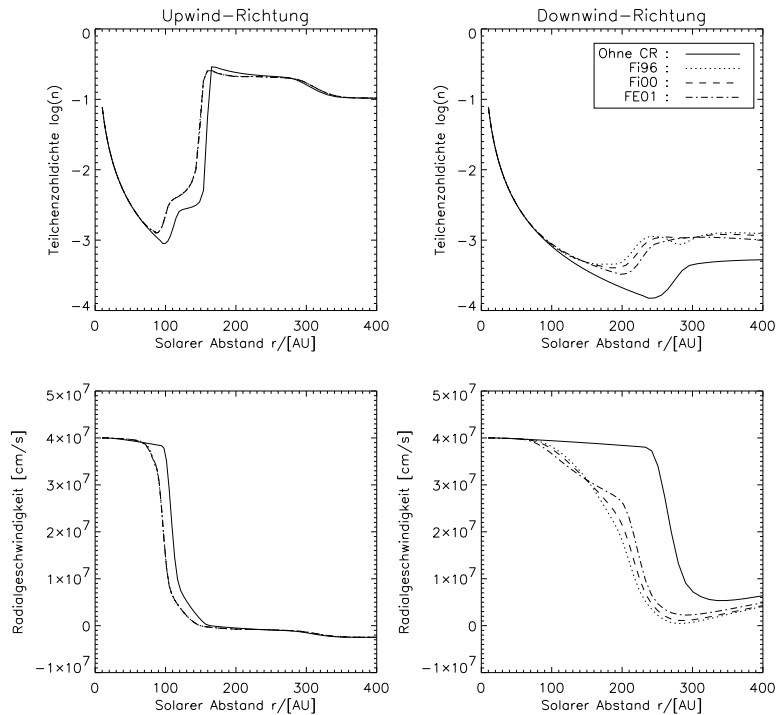


Figure 21. The number density (upper panels) and velocity (lower panels) of the solar wind plasma in the upwind (left) and the downwind direction (right) resulting from a a computation self-consistently including the back reaction of cosmic rays on heliospheric structure for three choices of the anisotropic diffusion tensor (dotted, dashed and dash-dotted lines) as compared to the case without cosmic rays (solid lines).

1643 within the framework of a 3D model, certain principal aspects were  
 1644 investigated already by Zank and Frisch (1999) with axisymmetric  
 1645 computations. Borrmann and Fichtner (2005) presented the plasma  
 1646 structure of a severely disturbed heliosphere as a result of a changing  
 1647 inflow direction of a local interstellar medium whose density is increas-  
 1648 ing to a ten-fold higher value as it can happen when the heliosphere is  
 1649 entering a different interstellar cloud. For a transition period of roughly  
 1650 400 years from one steady-state to another, the shape of the shrinking  
 1651 heliosphere is highly asymmetric, see Fig. 23, and one should expect  
 1652 a response of the spatial and spectral distribution of galactic cosmic  
 1653 rays.

1654 Such cosmic ray response to heliospheric environment changes has  
 1655 been studied by Scherer et al., Scherer et al., Florinski and Zank (2001a,

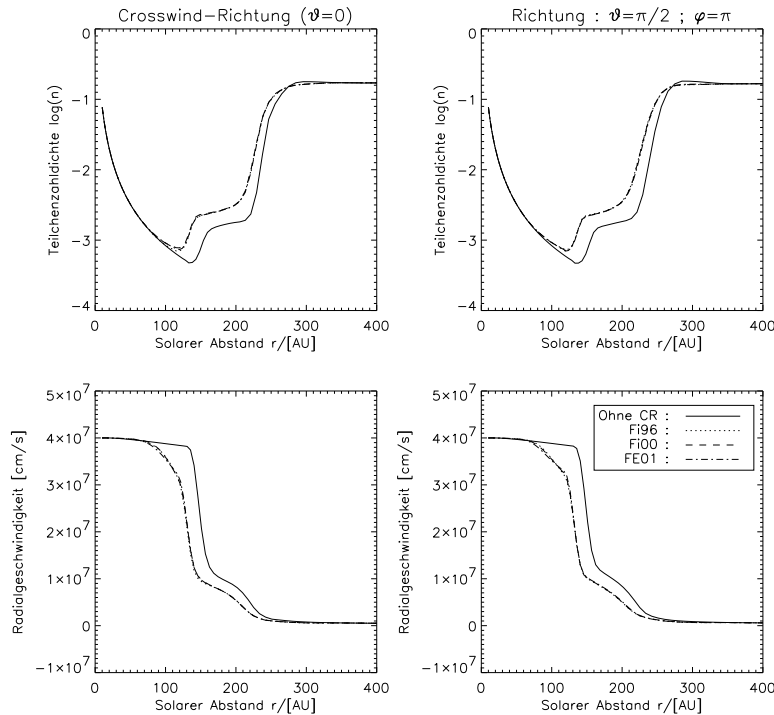


Figure 22. Same as Fig. 21 but for the polar (left panel) and the crosswind direction (right panel).

1656 2002, 2005) with a 2D model. These authors show that a changing  
 1657 interstellar environment can cause the cosmic ray flux at the Earth to  
 1658 be higher or lower than at present as is shown in Fig. 24.

1659 The resulting estimates of the corresponding  $^{10}\text{Be}$  production rates  
 1660 (see part VI) amount to about 80% to 400% of the present rate (Florin-  
 1661 ski and Zank, 2005). The authors remark, however, that these values  
 1662 depend critically on the model of heliospheric turbulence determining  
 1663 the cosmic ray spectra at the Earth.

1664 In summary one can state that the development of 3D models, which  
 1665 self-consistently include cosmic rays, is progressing but has not reached  
 1666 a satisfactory level. Given the rather high computational requirements  
 1667 of such modeling, progress will probably be slow. Therefore, 2D models  
 1668 will be very important tools with which many physical aspects can be  
 1669 studied in a rather good approximation. Also, they allow the incorpora-  
 1670 tion of more physical processes and their refined treatment, like the

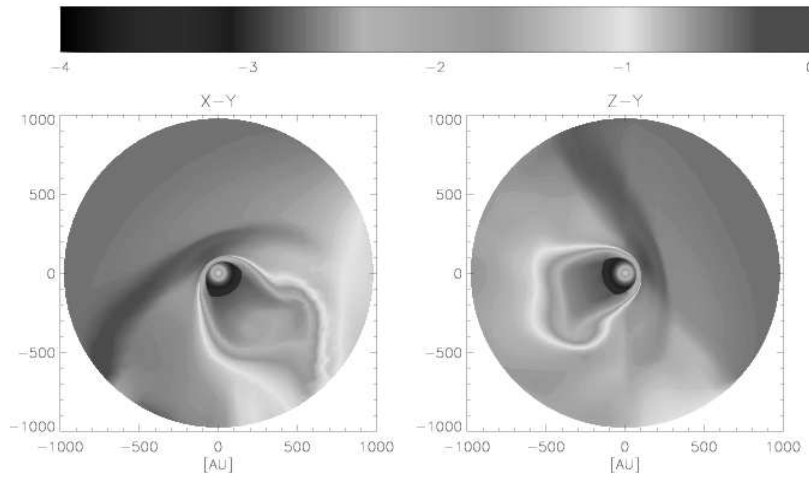


Figure 23. The structure of the heliosphere, here visualized with the proton number density  $n[\text{cm}^{-3}]$ , can be irregular in case of a time-varying local interstellar medium (taken from Borrmann and Fichtner (2005)).

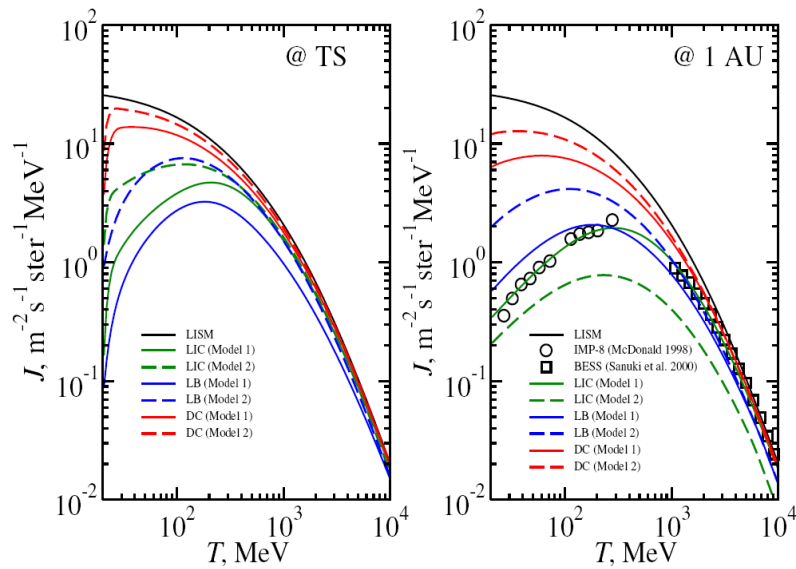


Figure 24. Spectra of galactic protons at 1.1 times the distance to the solar wind termination shock in the apex direction (left) and at 1 AU (right) for the three interstellar environments (taken from Florinski and Zank (2005)).

1671 solution of the kinetic transport equation. These 2D hybrid models are  
 1672 reviewed in the following section.

## 11. Cosmic Ray Transport in a Dynamic Heliosphere

To model cosmic ray modulation over long timescales and for different energies requires knowledge of the most important modulation processes and in particular how these change over a solar cycle. (See Potgieter and Ferreira (2001) and Potgieter (1998) for a review, and also part IV.) Also of great importance is to know the geometry of the modulation volume (heliosphere) as well as the plasma flow inside, which includes a transition from super to subsonic speeds. This shock also acts as an accelerator of cosmic rays, which in their turn might alter the original plasma flow.

In view of the above argumentation a hybrid model is required, taking into account the hydrodynamic equations (3) and the kinetic transport equation (1). Because the magnetic field is not dynamically important, one can chose  $B = 0$  in Eq. (3), but for the modulation of the CRs the magnetic field is not negligible, e.g.  $B \neq 0$ . To take care of this contradictory assumption, the Parker spiral field is calculate kinematically in the hydrodynamic part, in which it is not needed, but it is used in the kinetic part (Scherer and Ferreira, 2005a; Scherer and Ferreira, 2005b).

However, concerning the 11- and 22-year cosmic ray modulation propagating diffusion barriers (Burlaga et al., 1993) and drift effects (Jokipii et al., 1977) are important and are primarily responsible, especially at the higher energies, for time dependent modulation, see part IV. Apart from these, global changes in the HMF magnitude over a solar cycle also play an important role (Cane et al., 1999; Wibberenz et al., 2002). Both effects are combined into a compound approach (Ferreira and Potgieter, 2004) to calculate long-term cosmic ray modulation utilizing a self-consistent hybrid model. A short discussion of this approach and model is given below, together with some results which are presented thereafter.

### 11.1. COSMIC RAY TRANSPORT

The transport of ACRs and GCRs inside the heliosphere can be calculated by solving transport equation (1) for the differential intensity  $j = R^2 f$ , where  $f$  is the solution for distribution function and  $R$  is the rigidity.  $j$  is given in units of particles  $\text{m}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{sr}^{-1} \text{MeV}^{-1}$ .

To calculate  $j$  as self consistent as possible a hybrid model (Scherer and Ferreira, 2005a; Scherer and Ferreira, 2005b) was developed, in which three species are estimated hydrodynamically, the protons, neutral H-atoms and H-pick-up ions. Once the heliospheric geometry and plasma flow are calculated, they are transferred into the kinetic trans-

1713 port part (solving equation 1) to determine the spectra of the other two  
 1714 species, e.g. ACRs and GCRs, inside the heliosphere. This is all done  
 1715 dynamically including solar cycle related changes in  $\vec{v}$  and  $\vec{\kappa}$  which  
 1716 influences the heliospheric geometry particle transport therein. For the  
 1717 dynamics, it is assumed that the fast solar wind disappears over the  
 1718 solar poles toward solar maximum as observed by Ulysses (McComas  
 1719 et al., 2001) and close to the ecliptic the solar wind is always constant at  
 1720 slow speeds. As shown by e.g. (Ferreira and Scherer, 2004) and (Scherer  
 1721 and Ferreira, 2005a) this influences the geometry of heliosphere.

1722 Results of the hybrid model are presented in Fig. 25 showing the  
 1723 time evolution of the dynamic heliosphere including solar cycle related  
 1724 changes in the latitudinal profile of  $\vec{v}$ . Shown here is the proton ( $\vec{v}$  and  
 1725 LISM) speed for selected periods over a 11-year cycle as three plots  
 1726 representing increasing solar activity from top to bottom. An interest-  
 1727 ing aspect is the so called “tornado alley” evident at high latitudes  
 1728 beyond the termination shock. In this narrow region the plasma speed  
 1729 significantly differs compared to that of the surroundings. However, as  
 1730 the fast solar wind (solar minimum) over the poles disappears and only  
 1731 an uniformly slow solar wind (solar maximum) is left, this structure is  
 1732 less evident and almost disappears for extreme solar maximum periods.  
 1733 The most important feature shown here, from a CR modulation point  
 1734 of view, is that as solar activity increases the termination shock moves  
 1735 inward, especially at the polar and tail regions. That has important  
 1736 consequences for CR particle acceleration and distribution in these  
 1737 regions.

1738 The geometry of the heliosphere, as calculated by our hybrid model,  
 1739 is summarized in table II, where the radial distance of the shock and  
 1740 the heliopause are given for the nose, the pole, and tail, as well as the  
 1741 latitude  $34^\circ$ , corresponding to the Voyager 1 crossing of the termination  
 1742 shock. Note that the termination shock, and to a lesser extent the  
 1743 heliopause radius, depend on the plasma speed which changes over  
 1744 solar activity, emphasizing the need to compute these structures, and  
 1745 their effect on the CR distribution self-consistently. See Zank, Fichtner  
 1746 (1999, 2005) for a review. Note that solar cycle related changes in  $\vec{v}$   
 1747 also has a large effect on the cooling and acceleration of cosmic rays  
 1748 because of their dependence on  $\nabla \cdot \vec{v}$ .

## 1749 11.2. TRANSPORT COEFFICIENTS AND THE COMPOUND APPROACH

1750 The two most important CR transport processes in Eq. 1, are diffusion  
 1751 and drifts found in  $\vec{\kappa}$  where the following coefficients are of special  
 1752 interest

$$\kappa_{rr} = \kappa_{\parallel} \cos^2 \psi + \kappa_{\perp r} \sin^2 \psi \quad (48)$$

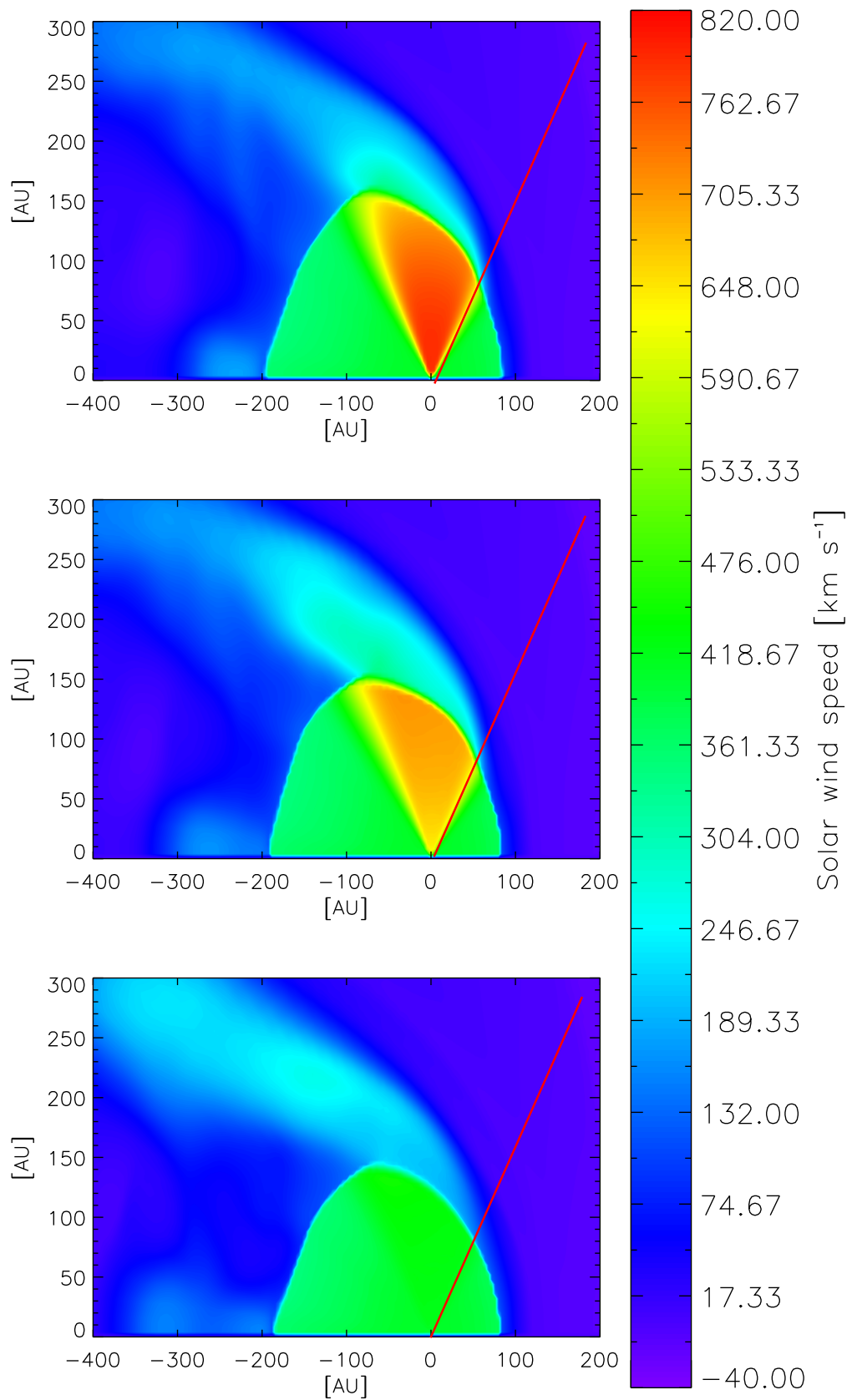


Figure 25. Time evolution of the dynamic heliosphere represented by the solar wind speed. The red line indicates the inclination at which Voyager 1 has crossed the termination shock



Table II. Heliospheric geometry during different levels of solar activity

Structure	Nose	Poles	Tail	Voyager 1
<i>Solar minimum</i>				
Termination shock	85 AU	137AU	189AU	92AU
Heliopause	120AU	219AU	undefined	134AU
<i>Solar maximum</i>				
Termination shock	85AU	130AU	173AU	93AU
Heliopause	121AU	228AU	undefined	135AU

$$\kappa_{\theta\theta} = \kappa_{\perp\theta} \quad (49)$$

$$\kappa_A = \frac{\beta P}{3B} \quad (50)$$

1753 these are, from top to bottom, the radial and polar diffusion and  
 1754 drifts respectively, with heliospheric magnetic field  $B$  (Parker, 1958)  
 1755 and spiral angle  $\psi$ . Here  $\kappa_{\parallel}$  is diffusion parallel to the heliospheric  
 1756 magnetic field,  $\kappa_{\perp r}$  perpendicular diffusion in the radial direction and  
 1757  $\kappa_{\perp\theta}$  perpendicular diffusion in the polar direction, compare with Fig. 2.

1758 Concerning the time-dependence of the CR transport parameters, it  
 1759 was shown by Perko and Fisk (1983) and le Roux and Potgieter (1989),  
 1760 that the modulation over long periods requires some form of propagat-  
 1761 ing diffusion barriers, see section 8. More recently Cane et al. (1999)  
 1762 and Wibberenz et al. (2002) argued that the CR step decreases ob-  
 1763 served at Earth could not be primarily caused by GMIRs because they  
 1764 occurred before any could form beyond 10 AU. Instead they suggested  
 1765 that time-dependent global changes in the HMF might be responsible  
 1766 for long-term modulation. These two ideas were combined by Ferreira  
 1767 (2002) and into the so-called compound approach, by simply multiply-  
 1768 ing all the diffusion (and drift) coefficients in  $\vec{\kappa}$  by a time dependent  
 1769 function

$$f_2(t) = \left( \frac{B_0}{B(t)} \right)^n \quad (51)$$

1770 with  $n = \alpha/k$  with  $\alpha$  the tilt angle and  $k$  a constant with the appro-  
 1771 priate units. Equation (51) use as time-dependent input parameters  
 1772 the observed tilt angle and HMF magnitude. This function results  
 1773 in transport parameters which is roughly a factor of  $\sim 10$  smaller for  
 1774 solar minima compared to solar maxima, see also Cummings and Stone

1775 (2001) and results in realistic time-dependent modulation (Ferreira and  
1776 Potgieter, 2004; Ndiitwani et al., 2005).

### 1777 11.3. RESULTS OF THE HYBRID MODEL

1778 Figure 26 shows the results from our hybrid model in the form of com-  
1779 puted 30 MeV ACR and GCR combined intensities in the meridional  
1780 plane of the heliosphere. The computations are presented as a series  
1781 of “snapshots” corresponding to different solar activity conditions. The  
1782 top left panel displays solar minimum, and then from left to right,  
1783 bottom to top, each panel shows increasing solar activity with the last  
1784 panel at the bottom showing the CR distribution at solar maximum.  
1785 Demonstrated here is that, in general, irrespectively of solar activity  
1786 the heliosphere and the CR distribution are highly asymmetrical due  
1787 to the motion of the Sun through the LISM, as well as the poleward  
1788 elongation of the termination shock and heliopause.

1789 One can see in Fig. 26 that there is a minor decrease of particle  
1790 intensities at the shock toward solar maximum. However, for the higher  
1791 latitudes in the heliospheric flanks in the nose direction (typically the  
1792 region where the fast solar wind dominates at solar minimum) there  
1793 is a large decrease of CR particles. This is because less ACRs, which  
1794 are accelerated in the equatorial regions, reach these high latitudes.  
1795 For the heliospheric tail this is not as clear because of the interesting  
1796 phenomenon that just after solar minimum, there is acceleration of  
1797 particles at high latitudes. This occurs just below the so-called “tornado  
1798 alley” which is an extension of a relatively high speed solar wind stream  
1799 into the tail region (Scherer and Ferreira, 2005b). These authors showed  
1800 that in this region at the termination shock,  $\nabla \cdot \vec{v}$  is comparable to  
1801 values in the equatorial regions of the nose, resulting in equally effective  
1802 acceleration. However, this effect is depending on solar activity and  
1803 disappears toward solar maximum conditions. Also of interest is the  
1804 large modulation volume in the tail, and the symmetric distribution of  
1805 CRs inside the termination shock, irrespectively of solar activity (Langner  
1806 and Potgieter, 2005a).

1807 Showing time dependent modulation over all energies, in Fig. 27  
1808 computed spectra for the  $A < 0$  polarity cycle (top panels) and for  
1809 the  $A > 0$  polarity cycle (bottom panels) are shown for galactic (left  
1810 panels), anomalous (middle panels) and combined (right panels) proton  
1811 intensities. From bottom to top the model solutions are plotted for  
1812 10, 60, 85 AU (which is the computed termination shock distance in  
1813 the equatorial regions), and 120 AU (which is the computed heliopause  
1814 distance at the stagnation line), respectively The solid lines correspond

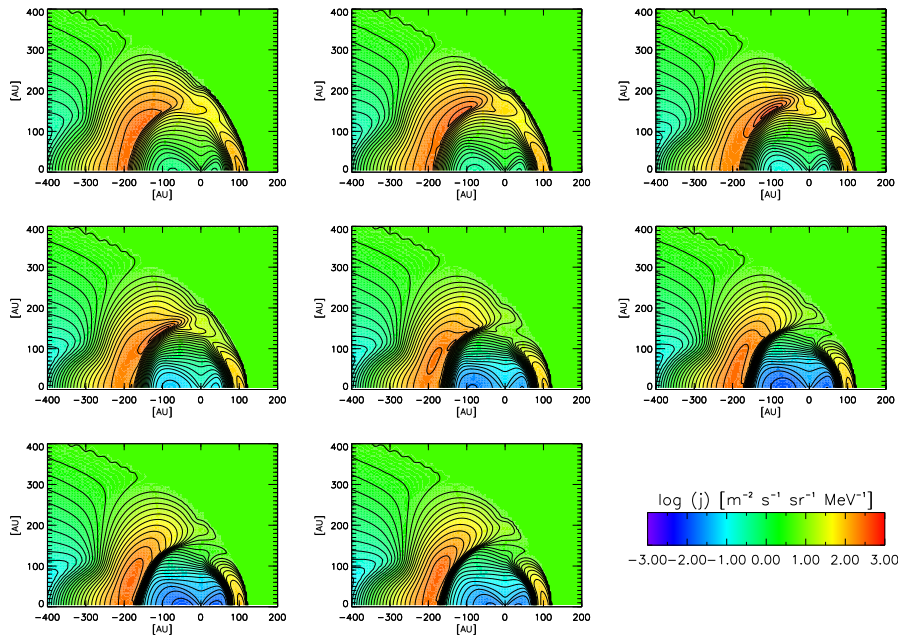


Figure 26. Computed 30 MeV ACR and GCR intensities in the meridional plane of the heliosphere. Results are shown as a series of snapshots corresponding to different solar activity conditions present in the heliosphere. The top left panel shows solar minimum, and then from left to right, bottom to top, each panel shows increasing solar activity with the middle panel at the bottom showing the cosmic ray distribution at solar maximum.

1815 to solar minimum, and the dashed lines correspond to solar maximum  
 1816 conditions present in the heliosphere.

1817 As solar activity increases, a reduction in the computed GCR in-  
 1818 tensities, as well as a reduction in the amount of particles accelerated  
 1819 at the termination shock occurs. The latter is especially evident for  
 1820 the  $A < 0$  polarity cycle where, due to the reduction of drifts, CRs  
 1821 now enter the heliosphere from all latitudes and are not as effectively  
 1822 accelerated in the equatorial region where the compression ratio of the  
 1823 solar wind termination shock is the largest. Also for solar maximum  
 1824 conditions, low energy GCRs are much more modulated leading to lower  
 1825 intensities, compared to solar minimum, and, therefore, less particles  
 1826 are accelerated to higher energies. For the ACRs there are even less  
 1827 particles accelerated toward higher energies for both polarity cycles, as  
 1828 shown in the middle panels of Fig. 27. Concentrating on the spectrum  
 1829 at the shock, the model shows for the  $A < 0$  polarity cycle, that, for the  
 1830 very low energies, there is not much difference between the computed  
 1831 intensities corresponding to different solar cycle conditions, due to the  
 1832 mono-energetic source which was specified at the termination shock.

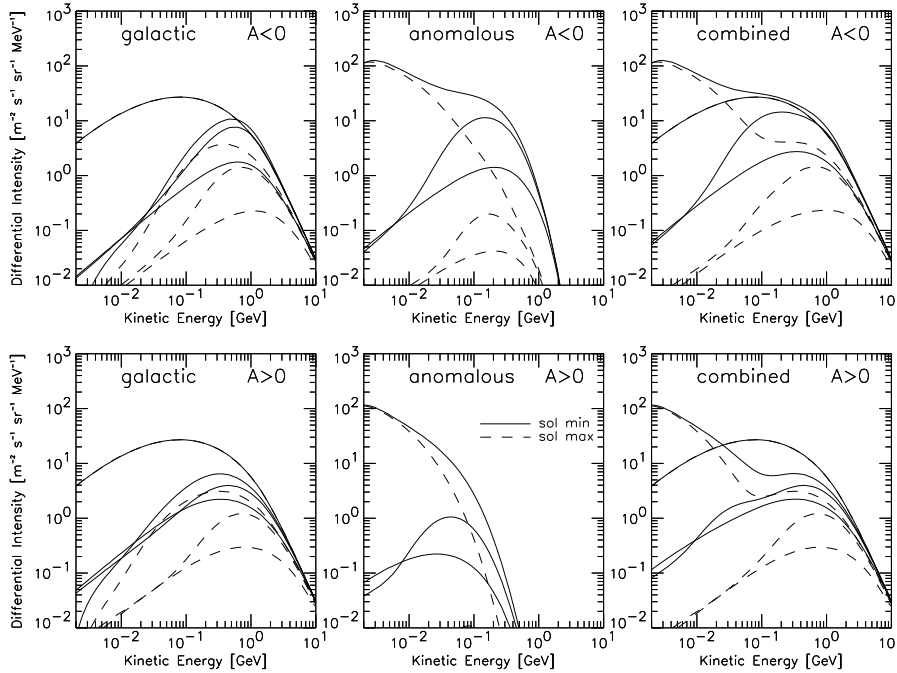


Figure 27. Computed spectra for the  $A < 0$  heliospheric magnetic field polarity cycle (top panels) and  $A > 0$  polarity cycle (bottom panels). Shown are computed galactic (left panels), anomalous (middle panels) and combined (right panels) proton spectra. Model solutions are shown from bottom to top at 10, 60, 85 AU (which is the computed termination shock distance at the stagnation line), and 120 AU (which is the computed heliopause distance in direction to the heliospheric nose). The solid lines correspond to computed intensities with solar minimum conditions, and the dashed lines correspond to solar maximum conditions present in the heliosphere

1833 For increasing energy the two spectra at the shock start to diverge  
 1834 because of the different modulation conditions, resulting in e.g. a factor  
 1835 of  $\sim 10$  less particles at 100 MeV for solar maximum conditions. For the  
 1836 inner heliosphere, e.g. inside 10 AU, the effect of increasing modulation  
 1837 results in even a larger reduction of particle intensities reducing number  
 1838 of anomalous particles by a factor of  $\sim 35$  during solar maximum. For  
 1839 the  $A > 0$  polarity cycle, the difference between the accelerated spectra  
 1840 at the shock, due to different heliospheric conditions, are not as pro-  
 1841 nounced. However, for regions inside the termination shock, especially  
 1842 in the inner heliosphere, the ACRs completely disappears (Lanzerotti  
 1843 and MacLennan, 2000; Reames and McDonald, 2003).

1844 For the combined intensities it is shown that the solar modulation  
 1845 amplitude is depending on distance and rigidity (Webber and Lock-  
 1846 wood, 2001; Webber and Lockwood, 2004). For example, at 200 MeV  
 1847 the ratio between the computed combined intensities for solar minima

1848 and solar maximum conditions at 10 AU is a factor  $\sim 10$ , at 60 AU it  
1849 is a factor  $\sim 4$ , and it decreases towards the heliopause. Also shown  
1850 is that for solar maximum conditions the computed combined spectra  
1851 for both polarity cycles are almost the same for all distances. This is  
1852 expected because of the reduction of drifts in the model via the com-  
1853 pound approach which is essential in explaining charge-sign dependent  
1854 modulation (Ferreira and Potgieter, 2004; Ndiitwani et al., 2005).



1855

## Part VI

1856

# Magnetospheric and Atmospheric Effects

1857





1858  
1859

## 12. Shielding by the Earth's Magnetosphere and Atmosphere

### 12.1. COSMIC RAY PROPAGATION IN THE EARTH'S MAGNETIC FIELD

1862 The Earth's magnetic field shields us partly against galactic cosmic rays  
1863 and solar particles. The lower energy limit needed for a charged particle  
1864 to cross the Earth's magnetosphere and access a specific position at  
1865 the top of the atmosphere decreases with the geomagnetic latitude of  
1866 the observer, resulting in a cosmic ray flux on Earth increasing pole-  
1867 ward. The cosmic ray flux dependence on the geomagnetic latitude was  
1868 already observed shortly after World War II. Fig. 28 represents the vari-  
1869 ation of the flux of fast neutrons in the atmosphere with geomagnetic  
1870 latitude measured by Simpson (1951, 2000).

1871 As a first approximation, the geomagnetic field can be represented  
1872 by a dipole centered on the Earth with an axis tilted approximately  
1873  $11^\circ$  to the spin axis of the Earth. In reality the geomagnetic field is  
1874 much more complex than a dipole. It is the result of the interaction of  
1875 the solar wind with the Earth's internal magnetic field and ionosphere  
1876 (McPherron, 1995). From this complex interaction several dynamical  
1877 magnetospheric current systems develop, resulting in several modifi-  
1878 cations of the Earth's magnetic field, among which are the compression  
1879 of the magnetic field lines in the day-side and their stretching in

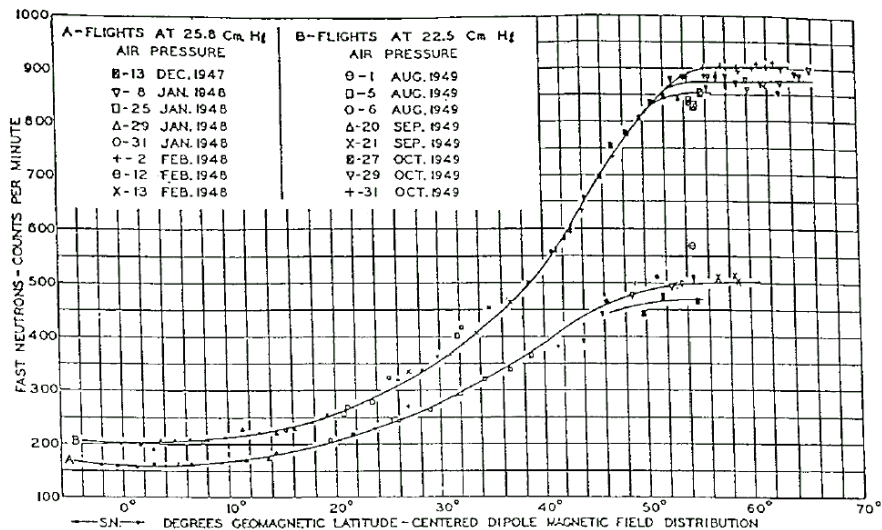
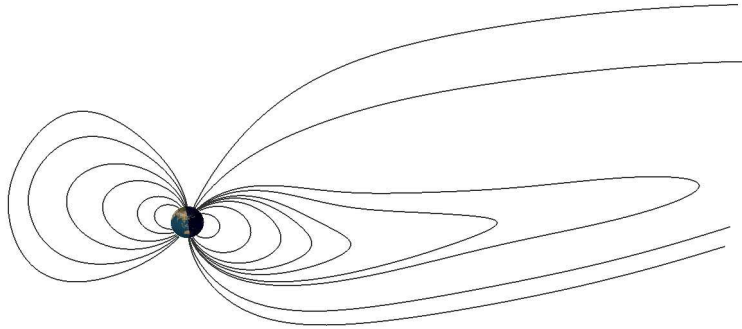


Figure 28. Geomagnetic latitude dependence of fast neutrons as observed by Simpson (1951), taken from Simpson (2000).



*Figure 29.* Configuration of the Earth's magnetosphere at 9 a.m. on January 1, 2005 as obtained by using the IGRF and Tsyganenko96 models for describing the internal and external geomagnetic field respectively (Langel, 1992; Tsyganenko, 1996). The different lines represent magnetic field lines which cross the Earth's surface on the noon-midnight meridian.

1880 the night-side, leading to a magnetosphere configuration as illustrated  
 1881 in Fig. 29. The external geomagnetic field, also called the magneto-  
 1882 spheric magnetic field, refers to the magnetic field induced by the mag-  
 1883 netospheric currents. The International Geomagnetic Reference Field  
 1884 (IGRF) model represents the most frequently used model of the Earth's  
 1885 internal magnetic field for the period 1900 to the present (Langel,  
 1886 1992). It is a spherical harmonic model, with coefficients derived from  
 1887 magnetic field measurements from geomagnetic stations, ship-towed  
 1888 magnetometers, and satellites. The spherical harmonic coefficients for  
 1889 a given period are obtained by interpolating and extrapolating the  
 1890 different IGRF parameters released every five years by the International  
 1891 Association of Geomagnetism and Aeronomy (IAGA). From continu-  
 1892 ous satellite measurements, different models of the external magnetic  
 1893 field depending on geomagnetic activity and solar wind parameters  
 1894 have also been developed (Olson and Pfitzer, 1982; Tsyganenko, 1989;  
 1895 Tsyganenko, 1995; Tsyganenko, 1996; Tsyganenko, 2002; Tsyganenko  
 1896 et al., 2003; Tsyganenko and Sitnov, 2005; Ostapenko and Maltsev,  
 1897 2000; Alexeev and Feldstein, 2001; Feldstein et al., 2005).

1898 For the study of the interaction of cosmic rays with the Earth's  
 1899 environment it is important to quantify the cutoff rigidity, which rep-

1900 represents roughly the lowest rigidity limit above which cosmic rays can  
 1901 cross the Earth's magnetosphere and reach a specific position from a  
 1902 specific observational direction (Cooke et al., 1991). For the purpose of  
 1903 the study of solar energetic particles observed on Earth during Ground  
 1904 Level Enhancement (GLE) or for the study of cosmic ray anisotropy,  
 1905 it is also important to determine the asymptotic direction of a cosmic  
 1906 ray particle, which represents its direction of motion before entering  
 1907 into the magnetosphere. By approximating the geomagnetic field by a  
 1908 geocentric dipole, the cutoff rigidity is expressed by the Störmer cutoff  
 1909 formula:

$$R_c = \frac{M \cos^4 \lambda}{r^2(1 + (1 - \cos^3 \lambda \cos \epsilon \sin \eta))^2} \quad (52)$$

1910 where  $M$  is the dipole moment,  $r$  is the distance from the dipole center,  $\lambda$   
 1911 is the geomagnetic latitude,  $\epsilon$  is the azimuthal angle measured clockwise  
 1912 from the geomagnetic east direction (for positive particles), and  $\eta$  is  
 1913 the angle from the local magnetic zenith direction (Cooke et al., 1991).  
 1914 Störmer (1950) studied theoretically the motion of charged particles  
 1915 in the geomagnetic dipole. Unfortunately, the Störmer formula gives  
 1916 only a first order approximation of the cutoff rigidity. For more precise  
 1917 estimation of the cutoff rigidity and for computing the asymptotic di-  
 1918 rection of incidence, backward trajectory tracing codes, which combine  
 1919 the IGRF model and an external magnetospheric model of the Earth,  
 1920 are needed (Flückiger and E., 1990, Smart et al., 2000 and references  
 1921 therein). In these codes the trajectories of cosmic rays with different  
 1922 rigidities, arriving at the same observing position and from the same  
 1923 direction of incidence, are computed backward in time as illustrated  
 1924 in Fig. 30. The curves labeled 1, 2, 3, and 4 represent the trajectories  
 1925 of positively charged particles with a rigidity of 20, 10, 5, and 4.5 GV  
 1926 respectively. In this case all the trajectories are initiated in the vertical  
 1927 direction at 20 km altitude above Jungfrauoch Switzerland. Particles  
 1928 with high rigidities (trajectory 1,2) have small trajectory bending be-  
 1929 fore escaping the Earth's magnetosphere. A particle with 5 GV rigidity  
 1930 is bent stronger but can still escape the Earth's magnetosphere. The  
 1931 trajectory labeled 4 makes several complex loops before reaching an-  
 1932 other point on the Earth's surface, illustrating that for this specific  
 1933 rigidity a cosmic ray can not reach the Jungfrauoch location. Some  
 1934 trajectories not shown here, which neither go back to the Earth nor  
 1935 leave the magnetosphere, can also be observed. Trajectories that do  
 1936 not leave the Earth's magnetosphere are called forbidden trajectories  
 1937 while those of particles escaping the Earth's magnetosphere are called  
 1938 allowed trajectories. The direction of motion at the position where an  
 1939 allowed trajectory crosses the magnetopause represents the asymptotic  
 1940 direction of incidence.

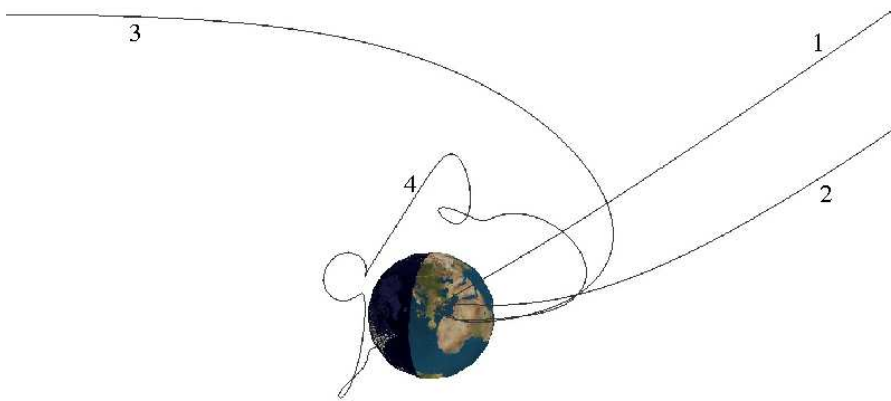


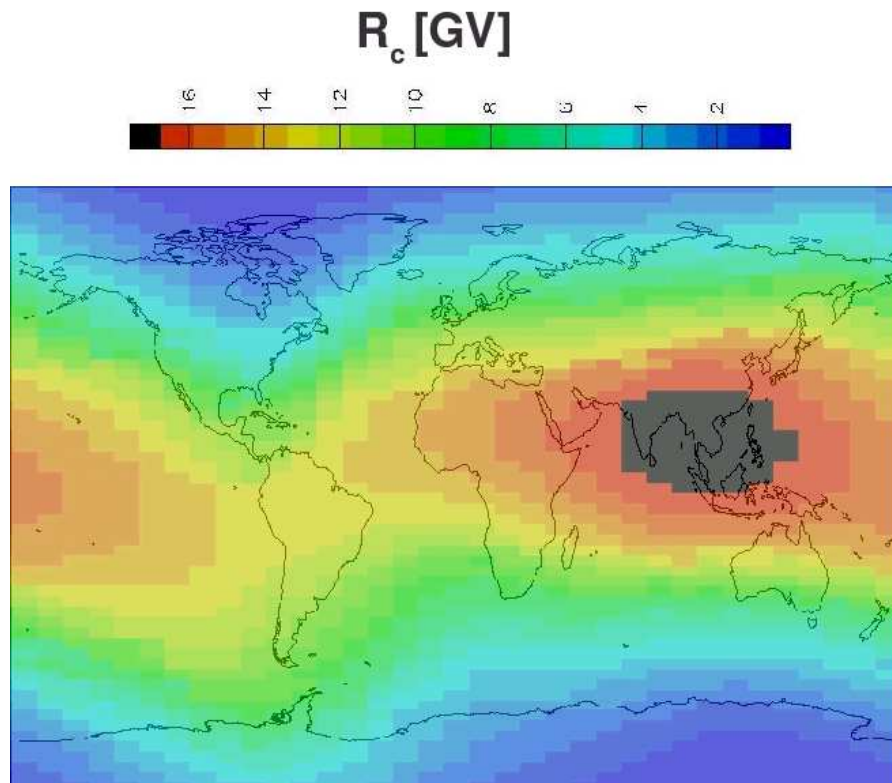
Figure 30. Illustration of the backward trajectory technique used for computing cutoff rigidity and asymptotic direction of incidence. See details in text.

1941 For a specific direction of incidence, backward trajectories are com-  
 1942 puted generally for a set of rigidities spanning a large range of values  
 1943 with a constant rigidity interval  $\delta R$  (usually 0.01 GV). From these  
 1944 computations three rigidity regions are identified: i) a high rigidity  
 1945 region where all trajectories are allowed, ii) a low rigidity region where  
 1946 all trajectories are forbidden and, iii) an intermediate region called the  
 1947 penumbra where bands of allowed trajectories are separated by bands  
 1948 of forbidden ones. The rigidity of the last allowed computed trajectory  
 1949 before the first forbidden one is called the upper cutoff rigidity  $R_U$ . The  
 1950 rigidity of the last allowed trajectory, below which all trajectories are  
 1951 forbidden, is called the lower cut-off rigidity  $R_L$ . Finally, the effective  
 1952 cutoff rigidity  $R_C$  is given by  $R_C = R_U - n\delta R$ , where  $n$  represents the  
 1953 number of allowed trajectories in the penumbra. The reader will find a  
 1954 complete description of the asymptotic direction computation method  
 1955 and cosmic ray cutoff terminology in Cooke et al. (1991).

1956 Figure 31 displays the vertical effective cutoff rigidity as a function  
 1957 of latitude and longitude on Earth obtained with the MAGNETO-  
 1958 COSMICS code (Desorgher, 2004). This kind of map is periodically  
 1959 published for 20 km and 450 km altitudes, and for different geomagnetic  
 1960 activities (Smart and Shea, 1997; Smart et al., 1999a; Smart et al.,  
 1961 1999b). For the analysis of the measurements of most ground-based  
 1962 cosmic ray experiments, where mostly vertically incident particles con-

1963 tribute to the counting rate, it is sufficient to consider that only cosmic  
1964 rays with rigidity higher than the vertical effective cutoff rigidity  $R_C$   
1965 can reach the top of the Earth's atmosphere from all directions of  
1966 incidence. However at high latitude and for positions with high cutoff  
1967 rigidity, the contribution of non vertical particles becomes important  
1968 and the variation of  $R_C$  with the direction of incidence must be taken  
1969 into account (Clem et al., 1997). In the left panel of Fig. 32 we illustrate  
1970 the difference obtained in the mean solar activity galactic proton flux  
1971 penetrating the atmosphere at mid-latitude if  $R_C$  is considered as being  
1972 constant (thin solid line) or as varying with the direction of incidence  
1973 (thick solid line). The dashed line represents the flux outside the mag-  
1974 netosphere. The right panel represents the variation of the flux with  
1975 the azimuth direction if  $R_C$  is considered as varying with the direction  
1976 of incidence. Note that for each azimuth the flux is integrated over the  
1977 zenith angle. The well-know east-west asymmetry is clearly observed.  
1978 Our computation of GCR induced atmospheric ionisation shows that  
1979 for these specific conditions the ionisation is overestimated by roughly  
1980 10 % in the higher part of the atmosphere (depth < 100gcm<sup>-2</sup>) if the  
1981 dependence of  $R_C$  on the direction is not considered.

1982 When studying the long term influence of cosmic rays on the Earth's  
1983 environment, it is important to take into account the variation of the  
1984 geomagnetic field during the past. Barraclough (1974) published spher-  
1985 ical harmonic models of the geomagnetic field for eight epochs between  
1986 1600 and 1910. By computing vertical cutoff rigidity using these mod-  
1987 els, (Shea and Smart, 2004) have estimated that the decrease of the  
1988 geomagnetic field over the last 400 years has probably induced a 10% in-  
1989 crease of the cosmic ray flux on Earth. Archeomagnetic data have been  
1990 used in various studies to quantify the variation of the geomagnetic  
1991 dipole moment over the last 50 000 years and 12 000 years (McElhinny  
1992 and Senanayake, 1982; Yang et al., 2000). Laj et al. (2000) and Laj  
1993 et al. (2002), have used sediments, archeomagnetic and volcanic data  
1994 for deducing the variation of the geomagnetic dipole over the last 75 000  
1995 years. Wagner et al. (2000) and Muscheler et al. (2005a) have deduced  
1996 from cosmogenic radionuclide data the variation of the geomagnetic  
1997 dipole moment over the past 60 000 years. In their studies the measured  
1998 concentration of radionuclides in natural archives is considered to be  
1999 an indirect proxy of the geomagnetic shielding and therefore of the  
2000 geomagnetic dipole (see section 13). In all reconstruction methods of  
2001 the past geomagnetic field over the millennium time scale cited above,  
2002 the Earth's magnetic field is considered to be a geocentric dipole. As  
2003 already said it is only a first order approximation and if possible the  
2004 non dipole component of the geomagnetic field should also be taken  
2005 into account to quantify the geomagnetic shielding. The importance of



*Figure 31.* Variation of the vertical effective cutoff rigidity as a function of latitude and longitude of the observer at 20 km altitude and for the time period 1982. The cutoff rigidities were computed with the MAGNETOCOSMICS code and by using the IGRF model. (Desorgher, 2004).

2006 the non-dipole component when quantifying the geomagnetic shielding  
 2007 during the past has been discussed by Flückiger et al. (2003) and Shea  
 2008 and Smart (2004). Very recently, Korte and Constable (2005b) and  
 2009 Korte and Constable (2005a) have released the first spherical harmonic  
 2010 model of the geomagnetic field for the last 7000 years. They have  
 2011 shown that the dipole component of their model follows the same time  
 2012 variation trend but is significantly smaller than the dipole moments  
 2013 obtained by Yang et al. (2000), and McElhinny and Senanayake (1982).  
 2014 No comparison of the geomagnetic shielding obtained with the various  
 2015 past geomagnetic field models has been published yet.

## 2016 12.2. COSMIC RAY INTERACTION IN THE ATMOSPHERE

2017 In addition to the Earth's magnetosphere, the Earth's atmosphere  
 2018 shields us partly against galactic and solar cosmic rays. Experiments in

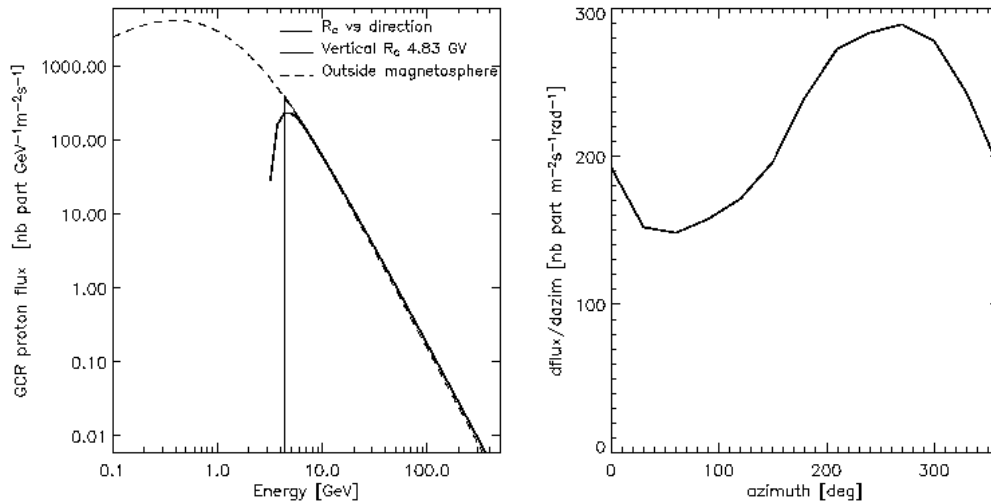


Figure 32. The left panel represents the mean solar activity GCR proton flux at the top of the atmosphere at  $45^\circ$  N latitude and  $0^\circ$  longitude, computed by considering the effective cutoff rigidity  $R_c$  either as varying with the direction of incidence (thick solid line) or as being constant for all directions (thin solid line). The dashed line represents the flux of GCR protons outside the magnetosphere. The right panel represents the computed azimuthal variation of the GCR proton flux at the top of the atmosphere that is obtained if the variation of  $R_C$  with the direction of incidence is taken into account. The flux at a given azimuth is integrated over the zenith angle. The east and west directions correspond to  $90^\circ$  and  $270^\circ$  azimuth respectively.

2019 space can resolve the individual chemical elements and isotopes of the  
 2020 cosmic radiation over an extended element and energy range. Hydrogen  
 2021 and helium nuclei are the dominant elements, constituting  $\sim 98\%$  of  
 2022 the cosmic ray ions. As an example Fig. 33 sketches typical cosmic ray  
 2023 energy spectra observed in interplanetary space near the Earth (from  
 2024 <http://helios.gsfc.nasa.gov/ace/gallery.html>).

2025 At energies below a few tenth of keV/nuc and above several GeV  
 2026 the solar wind and the galactic cosmic ray component are dominant. In  
 2027 the intermediate energy range particle intensities can vary by orders  
 2028 of magnitude during the 11 year solar activity cycle. The popula-  
 2029 tions indicated in Fig. 33 by corotating and anomalous cosmic rays  
 2030 are observed around solar minimum and represent particles that are  
 2031 accelerated in corotating interaction regions (Heber et al., 1999, and  
 2032 references therein) and at the termination shock (Fichtner, 2001, and

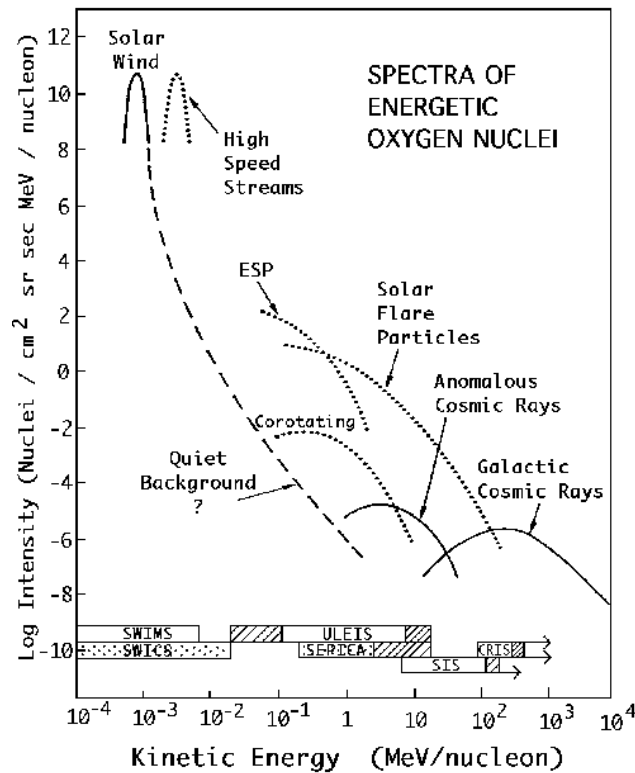


Figure 33. Typical oxygen energy spectra in interplanetary space close to the Earth (from <http://helios.gsfc.nasa.gov/ace/gallery.html>).

2033 references therein), respectively. Energetic storm particles (ESP) and  
 2034 solar flares particles occur sporadically and most likely around solar  
 2035 maximum. Protons in these solar energetic particle populations have  
 2036 energy spectra that span the region from about 10 keV to above 10 GeV.  
 2037 However, solar events producing protons with energies above 1 GeV  
 2038 are rare. Due to the geomagnetic shielding solar energetic particles  
 2039 with energy < 100 MeV can only reach the Earth's atmosphere over  
 2040 polar regions. When these particles hit the atmosphere they lose their  
 2041 energy mainly due to ionization, leading to the production of different  
 2042 trace gases, as discussed below. While the intensity of solar cosmic  
 2043 rays decreases strongly with energy, the spectra of galactic cosmic ray  
 2044 ions have maxima at several hundred MeV/nuc (Heber, 2001; Heber  
 2045 and Potgieter, 2000, and references therein). A GCR particle that  
 2046 penetrates into the Earth's atmosphere interacts by electromagnetic  
 2047 and nuclear processes with the atoms of the atmosphere, resulting in  
 2048 a cascade of secondary particles also called a cosmic ray shower, as



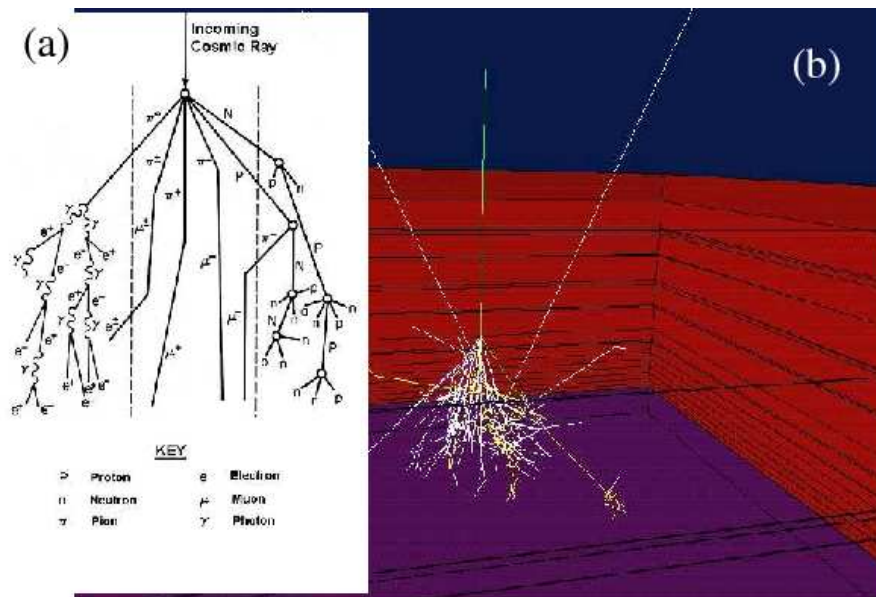


Figure 34. (a) Schematic view of a typical particle shower that develops when a cosmic ray interacts with the Earth's atmosphere. (b) Simulation with the ATMO-COSMICS code of 10 cosmic ray showers resulting from the interaction of 10 protons of 10 GeV energy with the Earth's atmosphere Desorgher et al. (2003).

2049 illustrated in Fig. 34, see also the following section. If the primary cosmic  
 2050 ray has an energy greater than 500 MeV the cosmic ray shower can  
 2051 reach the Earth's surface where the secondary particles may be detected  
 2052 by ground based cosmic ray experiments. A description of the different  
 2053 interactions involved in the development of a cosmic ray shower can be  
 2054 found for example in (Wolfendale, 1973; Stanev, 2004; Grieder, 2001).

2055 The effects of energetic particles on the Earth's environment are various.  
 2056 Some of these effects are listed below:

- 2057 1. Below 50 km altitude the cosmic ray shower particles are the main  
 2058 source of ionization in the atmosphere. As explained in the previous  
 2059 section, it has been proposed that the galactic cosmic ray induced  
 2060 atmospheric ionization plays a key-role in the formation of clouds  
 2061 in the troposphere and therefore that the cosmic ray flux could  
 2062 represent an important driver to explain the long term variation of  
 2063 the climate on Earth.

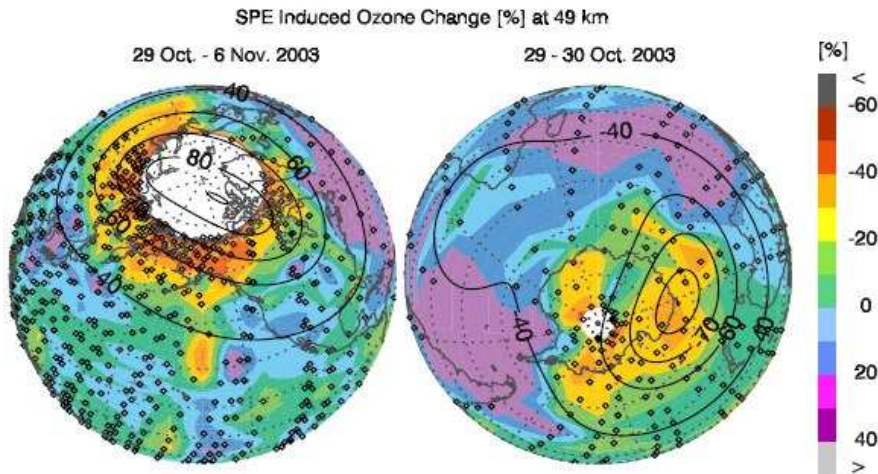


Figure 35. Changes in ozone concentration in the Earth's atmosphere at 49 km altitude during the October-November 2003 solar proton events. For details see Rohen et al. (2005).

- 2064 2. Solar energetic particles are the sources of ozone loss in the upper  
 2065 atmosphere (Callis et al., 1998; Jackman et al., 2000). The ioniza-  
 2066 tion and dissociation of the neutral atmosphere induced by charged  
 2067 particle precipitation leads to the formation of  $\text{N O}_x$  ( $\text{N}$ ,  $\text{N O}$ ,  $\text{N}$   
 2068  $\text{O}_2$ ) (Crutzen et al., 1975; Porter et al., 1976; Heath et al., 1977)  
 2069 and  $\text{H O}_x$  (Solomon et al., 1981), which in turn destroy the ozone.  
 2070 Figure 2 shows the change in ozone concentration at 49 km altitude  
 2071 during the October-November 2003 solar proton events in both  
 2072 hemispheres relative to a reference period before the large events  
 2073 occurred. Also shown are isolines of different magnetic latitudes.  
 2074 From that figure it is evident that the solar particles caused a signif-  
 2075 icant ozone loss in both hemispheres. While most authors consider  
 2076 only the interaction of solar energetic protons with the atmosphere,  
 2077 Schröter et al. (2005) computed the atmosphere ionization during  
 2078 the solar particle event on June 14th 1989, including the electron  
 2079 component. Their calculations shows a two times stronger ion pair  
 2080 production at altitudes between 50 km and 90 km.
- 2081 3. Cosmogenic nuclides are produced in the atmosphere by the inter-  
 2082 action of secondary cosmic ray protons and neutrons with atmo-  
 2083 spheric nuclei. The measurements of their concentrations in natural  
 2084 archives allows in particular to study the variation during the past  
 2085 of the cosmic ray flux and of the Earth's climate (see section 13).

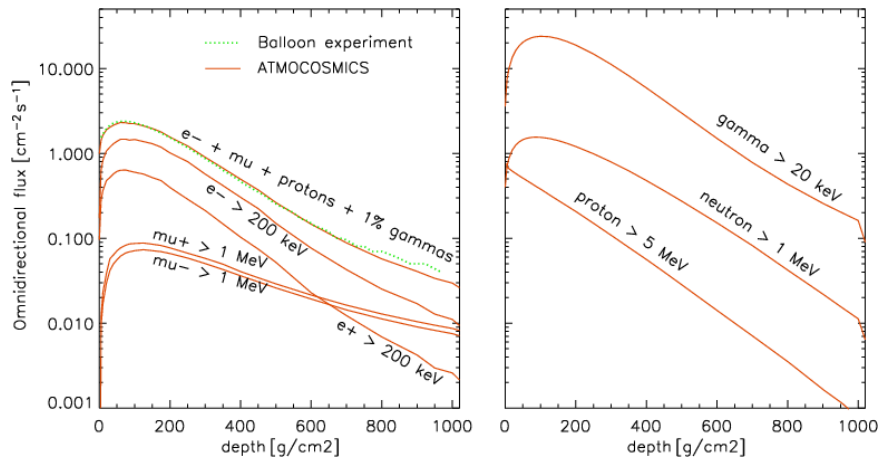


Figure 36. The solid lines represent the ATMOCOSMICS computed flux of cosmic ray shower particles vs atmospheric depth over Moscow during solar maximum activity. The dotted line in the left panel represents the year 2000 averaged flux of cosmic ray measured over Moscow by the balloon experiment from the Lebedev Physical Institute (Bazilevskaya et al., 1991). This experiment is sensitive to fluxes of electrons with energy  $> 200$  keV, protons with energy  $> 5$  MeV, muons, and 1% of gamma rays with energy  $> 20$  keV. The upper most solid line in this panel represents the total flux of these particles computed with ATMOCOSMICS. From (Desorgher et al., 2005)

2086 To quantify the effect of cosmic rays on the Earth's environment it  
 2087 is important to know precisely the flux of cosmic ray shower particles  
 2088 in function of position, atmospheric depth, and time. For this purpose  
 2089 complex codes that simulate the transport of cosmic rays through the  
 2090 Earth's atmosphere have been developed by several groups and vali-  
 2091 dated with experimental data (O'Brien, 1979; Velinov et al., 2001; Zuc-  
 2092 con, 2002; Clem et al., 2003; Webber and Higbie, 2003; Lei et al.,  
 2093 2004; Desorgher et al., 2005; Schröter et al., 2005). One of this code  
 2094 is the Monte Carlo ATMOCOSMICS<sup>2</sup> code, based on Geant4 (Geant4  
 2095 Collaboration et al., 2003), that allows to simulate the hadronic and  
 2096 electromagnetic interaction of energetic particles ( $< 1$  TeV) with the  
 2097 Earth's atmosphere (Desorgher et al., 2003; Desorgher et al., 2005).  
 2098 As an example Fig. 34 displays on the right simulation results of the  
 2099 interaction of 10 GeV protons with the Earth's atmosphere obtained  
 2100 with ATMOCOSMICS.

2101 Desorgher et al. (2005) simulated with ATMOCOSMICS the inter-  
 2102 action of galactic cosmic ray protons with energy  $< 1$  TeV with the  
 2103 Earth's atmosphere over Moscow during solar maximum activity. In

<sup>2</sup> It is now part of the PLANETOCOSMICS program which is available from <http://cosray.unibe.ch/~laurent/planetocosmics>.

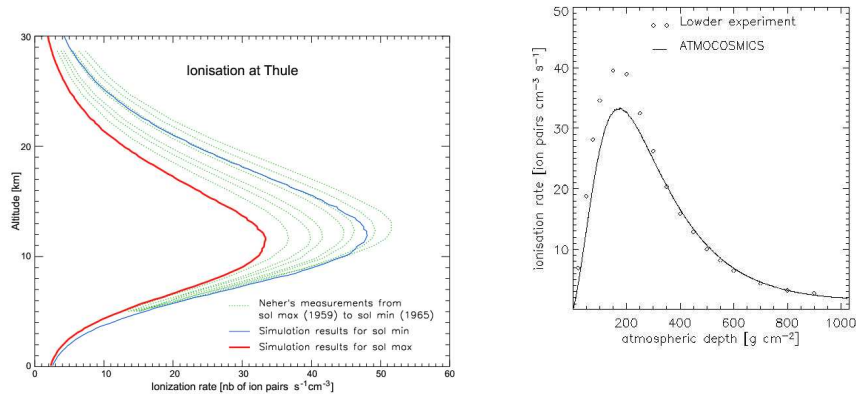


Figure 37. Left: The thin and bold solid lines represent the ATMO-COSMICS computed atmospheric ionization rate induced by galactic cosmic rays (GCR) over Thule during the minimum and maximum of solar activity, respectively (Desorgher et al., 2005). The dotted lines represent the atmospheric ionization rate measured over Thule by Neher (1971) from 1959 to 1965. Right: Atmospheric ionization rate induced by GCR over Durham NH in May 1969 as computed by ATMO-COSMICS (solid line) and measured by (Lowder et al., 1971) (diamonds).

2104 both panels of Fig. 36 the solid lines represent the computed flux of  
 2105 different types of secondary particles versus atmospheric depth.

2106 The dotted line in the left panel of 36 represents the yearly averaged  
 2107 flux of cosmic ray shower particles measured over Moscow by  
 2108 the balloon experiment of the Lebedev Physical Institute (Bazilevskaya  
 2109 et al., 1991). The upper most solid line represents the ATMO-COSMICS  
 2110 computed total flux of particles at which this experiment is sensitive  
 2111 (e.g. electrons with energy  $> 200$  keV, protons with energy  $> 5$  MeV,  
 2112 muons, and 1% of gamma rays with energy  $> 20$  keV). It can be seen  
 2113 that a very good agreement was obtained between the simulation results  
 2114 and the experimental data.

2115 In order to investigate the cosmic ray cloud hypothesis several groups  
 2116 have computed the GCR induced atmospheric ionization by using cos-  
 2117 mic ray transport codes (Usoskin et al., 2004a; Pallé et al., 2004;  
 2118 Desorgher et al., 2005). In most of these codes the computed energy  
 2119 deposited by cosmic ray showers in the Earth's atmosphere is converted  
 2120 into an ionization rate by considering a  $\sim 35$  eV mean ionisation energy.  
 2121 In Fig. 37 the ATMO-COSMICS computed atmospheric ionization rate  
 2122 induced by GCR over Thule (left panel) for minimum and maximum  
 2123 solar activity, and over Durham NH in May 1969 (right panel), are  
 2124 compared to experimental data from Neher (1971) and Lowder et al.

2125 (1971), respectively. A good agreement between the simulation results  
2126 and the measurements is obtained.

2127 In conclusion complex transport codes like MAGNETOCOSMICS  
2128 and ATMOCOSMICS simulating the interaction of cosmic rays with  
2129 the Earth's magnetosphere and atmosphere have to be used to better  
2130 understand and quantify the effect of cosmic rays on our environment.

### 2131 13. Cosmic Ray Flux and Cosmogenic Isotopes

2132 Primary cosmic rays are charged particles, which impinge on Earth  
2133 with relativistic energies (i.e., above 0.1 GeV). Most of these originate  
2134 from outside the solar system (i.e. GCRs), while the remainder, with  
2135 lower energies, originate from the Sun (i.e. SEPs), see Masarik and  
2136 Reedy (1995). Secondary cosmic-rays are produced through the inter-  
2137 action of primary cosmic rays with atmospheric and terrestrial nuclei,  
2138 and include strongly interacting particles (e.g. neutrons, protons and  
2139 pions), weakly interacting particles (e.g. muons and neutrinos), elec-  
2140 tromagnetic radiation (photons), positrons and electrons. Secondary  
2141 neutrons are responsible for the majority of nuclear transformations in  
2142 which cosmogenic nuclides are produced (Lal, 1991). Neutrons may be  
2143 classified by energy according to the types of nuclear reactions in which  
2144 they are involved (Masarik and Reedy, 1995):

- 2145 – *High-energy neutrons* are produced through direct reactions of pri-  
2146 mary and secondary cosmic-ray particles with terrestrial nuclei.  
2147 They are capable of inducing spallation reactions, and range from  
2148 primary energies of several GeV down to ca. 10 MeV.
- 2149 – *Fast neutrons* are produced primarily from the de-excitation of  
2150 nuclei following compound nucleus reactions produced through  
2151 interaction with high-energy neutrons. A common mode of de-  
2152 excitation is nuclear evaporation: the emission of neutrons and  
2153 protons with kinetic energies in the range 0.1-10 MeV.
- 2154 – *Slow neutrons* have kinetic energies in the order of 1 keV, and are  
2155 produced from the slowing down of fast neutrons, through elastic  
2156 and inelastic collisions with nuclei.
- 2157 – *Thermal and epithermal neutrons* are produced from the slowing  
2158 down of fast neutrons to energies similar to the vibrational motion  
2159 of nearby molecules. An important characteristic is their rela-  
2160 tively high probability of being absorbed by some nuclei. Thermal

2161 neutrons have an average energy of 0.025 eV at 20° C , while ep-  
2162 ithermal neutrons have energies between 100 eV and the cadmium  
2163 cut-off energy for transparency to neutrons of 0.5 eV.

2164 The development of accelerator mass-spectrometry (AMS) has in-  
2165 creased the detection sensitivity for long-lived cosmogenic radionu-  
2166 clides, produced in nuclear reactions initiated by cosmic rays, by several  
2167 orders of magnitude and allows us now to analyse with high resolution  
2168 natural archives such as ice cores. The concentration of cosmogenic  
2169 nuclides in these archives is the result of the interplay between three  
2170 processes: production, transport and deposition. In order to make full  
2171 use of the information stored in these archives, a detailed knowledge of  
2172 the source functions of the cosmogenic nuclides is necessary.

2173 Models have been developed that describe the production of nuclides  
2174 by the interaction of cosmic ray particles with the main target elements  
2175 of the atmosphere. The first extensive and pioneering work in this field  
2176 by Lal and Peters (1967) was based on data from direct observations  
2177 limited to a few years. Subsequently there have been a number of model  
2178 calculations devoted to particle and cosmogenic nuclide production in  
2179 the atmosphere (Hess et al., 1961; Newkirk, 1963; Lingenfelter, 1963;  
2180 Oeschger et al., 1969; Light et al., 1973; O'Brien, 1979; Blinov, 1988;  
2181 Masarik and Reedy, 1995), see also the previous section.

2182 The good agreement between the calculated and measured  $^{14}\text{C}$  pro-  
2183 duction rates proves the reliability of the model approach. However, we  
2184 have to take into account that the conditions affecting the cosmic ray  
2185 propagation within the heliosphere are changing with time (quiet-Sun  
2186 periods like during the Maunder Minimum (1645–1715 AD), low or high  
2187 geomagnetic field intensity like during the Laschamp event about 40 ky  
2188 BP).

2189 The production rate of cosmogenic nuclides depends on the CRF.  
2190 Time-dependent changes of the production rate are caused mainly by  
2191 variations of the geomagnetic field intensity and the solar activity. From  
2192 measurements of cosmogenic radionuclides with different half-lives and  
2193 different irradiation histories in meteorites, the average galactic CRF  
2194 was inferred to be constant within 10% during the last few million years  
2195 (Vogt et al., 1990). The incident CRF on Earth is different from that  
2196 incident on meteorites at least in one respect: the Earth's geomagnetic  
2197 field prevents most low energetic cosmic-ray particles from interacting  
2198 with the atmosphere.

2199 Concentrations of cosmogenic nuclides observed in various archives  
2200 on the Earth's surface are determined by their production, atmospheric  
2201 mixing, and deposition processes. We concentrate here only on the pro-

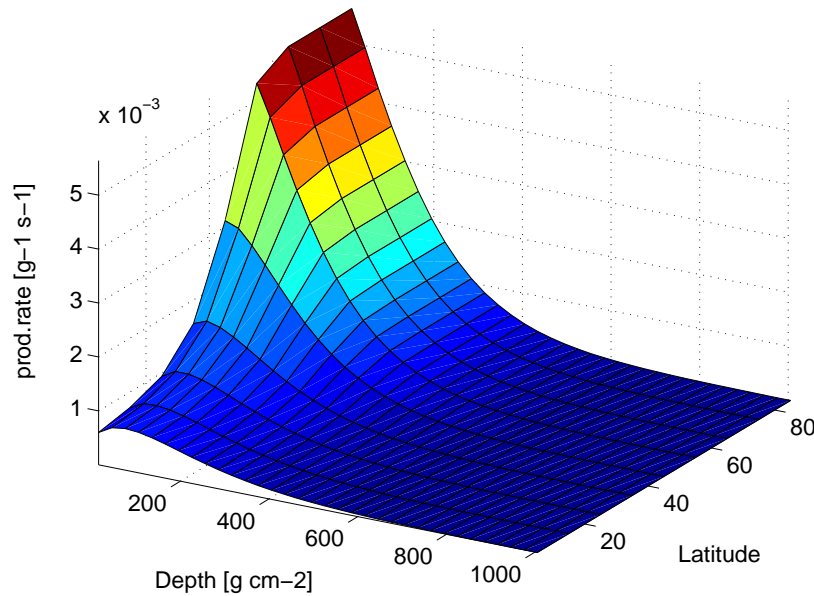


Figure 38. Dependence of the atmospheric  $^{10}\text{Be}$  production rate on the depth and the latitude assuming the present magnetic field intensity and a solar activity of  $F = 700 \text{ MeV}$ . The production rate is largest at high latitude high altitude and decreases with decreasing latitude for all depths in the atmosphere.

2202 duction processes, which depend on both the latitude and the altitude  
 2203 (Fig. 38).

2204 To simulate in detail the development of the secondary particle cas-  
 2205 cade in the atmosphere and to calculate the corresponding production  
 2206 rates of cosmogenic isotopes in the atmosphere, numerical models were  
 2207 developed. Among the most frequently used models are LCS (Prael  
 2208 and Lichtenstein, 1989), GEANT (Brun et al., 1987) combined with  
 2209 MCNP (Briesmeister, 1993), and MCNPX (Waters, 1999). These codes  
 2210 use only basic physical quantities and parameters, without including  
 2211 any free parameters, to numerically simulate all processes relevant in  
 2212 particle production and transport. This enables us to trace the fate of  
 2213 each individual particle and in doing so to study in detail the effects  
 2214 of various parameters on the production rate such as geomagnetic and  
 2215 solar modulation for a wide range of possible conditions. In spite of  
 2216 the fact that the above mentioned codes differ in the values of some  
 2217 physical parameters used in the simulations of elementary processes,  
 2218 they all represent the involved physics satisfactorily. Within the sta-

2219 tistical errors, an equally good agreement between experimental and  
2220 calculated production rates was obtained.

### 2221 13.1. CALCULATION OF COSMOGENIC NUCLIDE PRODUCTION 2222 RATES

2223 The production rate of the cosmogenic nuclide  $j$  at depth  $D$  is

$$P_j(D) = \sum_i N_i \sum_k \int_0^k \sigma_{ijk}(E_k) J_k(E_k, D) dE_k \quad (53)$$

2224 where  $N_i$  is the number of atoms for target element  $i$  per kg material in  
2225 the sample,  $\sigma_{ijk}(E_k)$  is the cross section for the production of nuclide  
2226  $j$  from the target element  $i$  by particles of type  $k$  with energy  $E_k$ ,  
2227 and  $J_k(E_k, D)$  is the total flux of particles of type  $k$  with energy  $E_k$   
2228 at location  $D$  inside the atmosphere. In our model, the particle fluxes  
2229  $J_k(E_k, D)$  are calculated using the numerical codes. The cross sections  
2230  $\sigma_{ijk}(E_k)$  were those evaluated from many measurements and used in  
2231 earlier calculations. Some information related to the used cross sections  
2232 is given below.

2233 The main problem with the calculation of production rates using  
2234 calculated fluxes and code-independent sets of cross sections for the  
2235 particular nuclides, is the frequent lack of measured cross sections,  
2236 especially for neutron-induced reactions.

### 2237 13.2. GEOMETRICAL AND CHEMICAL MODEL OF THE EARTH

2238 All calculations based the Monte Carlo technique use a 3D-model of  
2239 the Earth assumed as a sphere with a radius of 6378 km, and a surface  
2240 density of  $2 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ . The composition of the Earth's atmosphere in  
2241 weight fractions is: 0.755 N, 0.232 O, and 0.013 Ar. The errors resulting  
2242 from the assumed average composition of the atmosphere and surface  
2243 are also not significant because it was found (Masarik and Reedy,  
2244 1994) that, except for hydrogen, small changes in the abundance of  
2245 the elements affect only little the calculated particle fluxes.

2246 The Earth's atmosphere is modeled as a spherical shell with an inner  
2247 radius of 6378 km and a thickness of 100 km. The atmospheric shell is  
2248 usually divided into a certain number of concentric subshells of equal  
2249 thickness ( $\text{g cm}^{-2}$ ), in order to get a depth dependence of particle  
2250 fluxes. Each shell is divided into 9 latitudinal sections corresponding to  
2251 steps of 10 degrees in magnetic latitude. The atmospheric pressure, den-  
2252 sity and temperature profiles are approximated by the U.S. Standard  
2253 Atmosphere 1976, model (Champion et al., 1985) that approximates



2254 long-term mean conditions at low-mid latitudes, but cannot represent  
 2255 extremes such as Antarctica, where pressures fall 20–40 hPa below the  
 2256 Standard Atmospheric curve (Warren, 1999).

### 2257 13.3. COSMIC RAY PARTICLE FLUXES AND COSMOGENIC NUCLIDE 2258 PRODUCTION

2259 The simulation of particle production and transport processes in all  
 2260 numerical simulations begins with the choice of the primary particle  
 2261 type and its energy. The primary cosmic ray flux at the Earth's orbit  
 2262 has two components: galactic (GCR) and solar (SEP).

2263 The GCR particles are a mixture of  $\approx 87\%$  protons,  $\approx 12\%$   $\alpha$ -particles  
 2264 and  $\approx 1\%$  of heavier nuclei with atomic numbers from 3 to  $\approx 90$  (Simp-  
 2265 son, 1983). The spectral distributions of all particles look quite similar  
 2266 if they are compared in units of energy per nucleon. The propagation  
 2267 of the GCR particles to the Earth is influenced by many interactions  
 2268 that lead to spatial and temporal variations. The dominant effect is  
 2269 the heliospheric modulation, see part IV. Near the Earth during a  
 2270 typical solar cycle, the low energy part of GCR particle flux ( $E <$   
 2271  $1 \text{ GeV/nucleon}$ ) varies by an order of magnitude. With increasing  
 2272 energy, the modulation effect becomes weaker (Fig. 39).

2273 Solar modulation is taken into account in the expression for the  
 2274 differential primary GCR proton flux. Most simulations use the Castag-  
 2275 noli and Lal (1980) formula for the differential spectra of GCR primary  
 2276 protons. Later another formula was suggested by Webber and Higbie  
 2277 (2003). The influence of solar modulation on cosmogenic nuclides is  
 2278 illustrated in Fig. 40.

2279 For GCR alpha particles and heavier nuclei, analogous formulae  
 2280 hold with slightly different parameters (Lal, 1988). Since differences in  
 2281 cross sections for neutron and proton emission in reactions of primary  
 2282 GCR protons and alpha particles are very small, only interactions of  
 2283 protons are simulated and results are multiplied by factor of 1.44 to  
 2284 account for heavier nuclei. From the fitting of lunar experimental data  
 2285 (Reedy and Masarik, 1994), the effective long-term average flux of  
 2286 nucleons with energies above 10 MeV at 1 AU was determined to be  
 2287  $4.56 \text{ nucleons cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ .

2288 Because of their relatively low energies, SEP can cause nuclear reac-  
 2289 tions in the Earth's atmosphere only at high geomagnetic latitudes  
 2290 (above  $60^\circ$ ), and even there the nuclide production is restricted to  
 2291 the very top of the atmosphere. The long-term average production of  
 2292 cosmogenic nuclides by SEP is not expected to be significant. Some  
 2293 huge solar-particle events produce proton fluxes much higher than the  
 2294 average, and they could make a contribution to the production of some

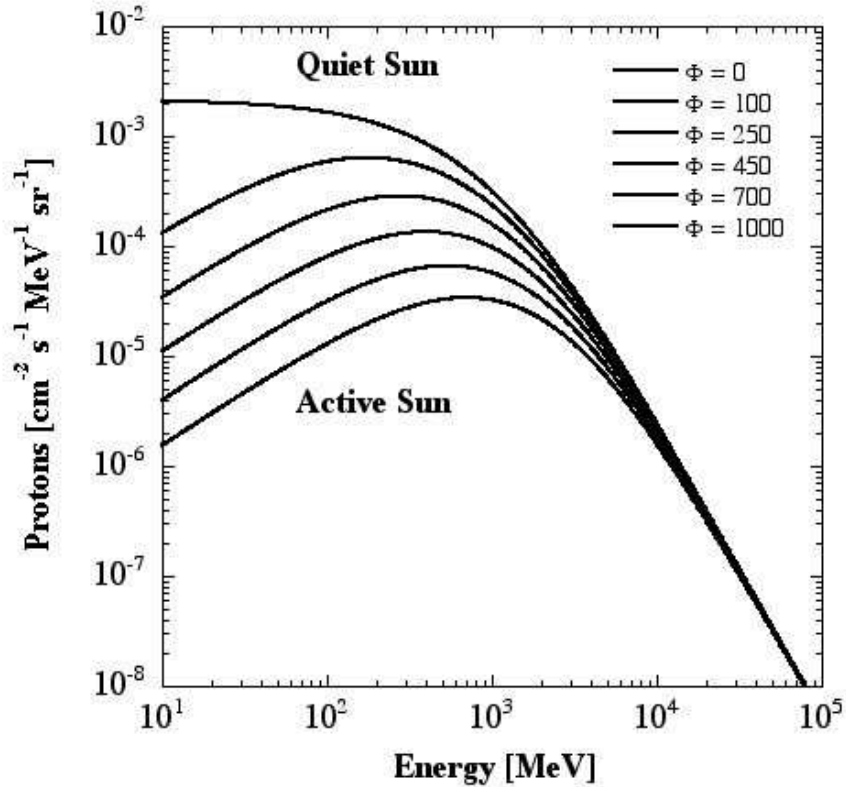


Figure 39. Differential primary proton spectra of the GCRs for different levels of solar activity expressed by the solar modulation parameter  $\Phi$ .

2295 cosmogenic nuclides (e.g.  $^7\text{Be}$  and  $^{36}\text{Cl}$ ) observable in some layers in  
 2296 polar ice ( $^{36}\text{Cl}$ ), such as from Greenland and Antarctica. Calculations  
 2297 confirming these expectations with the analysis of obtained results were  
 2298 published earlier (Masarik and Reedy, 1995).

#### 2299 13.4. THE GEOMAGNETIC FIELD AND COSMOGENIC NUCLIDE 2300 PRODUCTION

2301 The geomagnetic field, which is dominated by its dipole component,  
 2302 acts as a shield. It deflects incoming particles depending on their electric  
 2303 charge, energy, and angle of incidence. Depending on the geomagnetic  
 2304 latitude and angle of incidence, there is a critical energy below which  
 2305 cosmic-ray particles cannot penetrate into the Earth's atmosphere. This

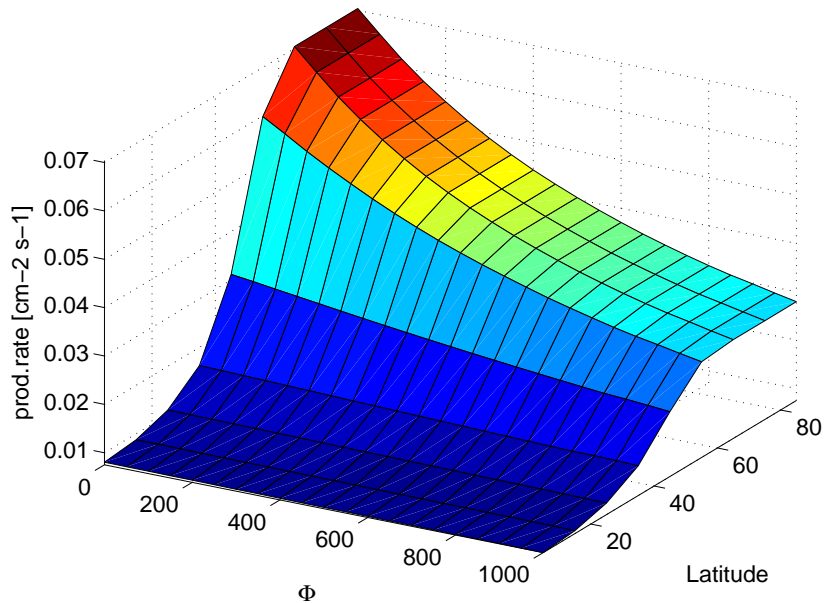


Figure 40. Dependence of the depth integrated atmospheric  $^{10}\text{Be}$  production rate on the solar modulation  $\Phi$  and the latitude. Due to the large cut-off rigidity at low latitudes solar modulation is largest at high latitudes.

2306 leads to a latitudinal dependence of the primary and secondary particle  
 2307 fluxes and consequently also of the production rate of cosmogenic nu-  
 2308 clides, with higher values around the magnetic poles and lower values  
 2309 in the equatorial region (Fig. 41). From paleomagnetic records, it is  
 2310 known that the geomagnetic field varied in the past in its intensity,  
 2311 direction, and polarity (Tauxe, 1993; Gosse et al., 1996; Yang et al.,  
 2312 2000).

2313 Two main approaches to the characterization of geomagnetic field  
 2314 effects are used in theoretical estimates of cosmogenic nuclide pro-  
 2315 duction. The first is based on the relation between cosmic ray flux  
 2316 and the magnetic inclination and the second is based on the cut-off  
 2317 rigidities corresponding to a particular geomagnetic latitude. The most  
 2318 of theoretical models, especially Monte Carlo models, uses the second  
 2319 approach. The cut-off rigidity ( $R_c$ ) describes the momentum to charge  
 2320 ratio above which these particles can penetrate the geomagnetic field  
 2321 and interact with the Earth's atmosphere. The value of  $R_c$  tends to in-  
 2322 crease with decreasing latitude, resulting in lower cosmic-ray intensities  
 2323 towards the equator (Graham et al., 2005).

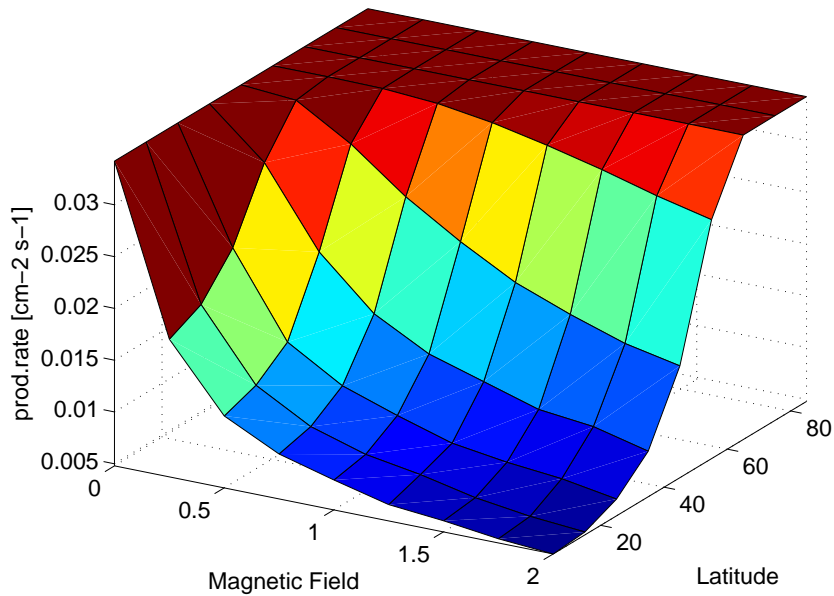


Figure 41. Dependence of the depth integrated atmospheric  $^{10}\text{Be}$  production rate on the geomagnetic field intensity and the latitude. The field intensity is expressed in relative units with 1 for the present field intensity. The latitudinal production rates decrease with decreasing latitude for all field intensities larger than zero.

2324 In a magnetic field with substantial non-dipolar components, such  
 2325 as the present geomagnetic field, there is always a “longitude effect”  
 2326 in cosmic-ray intensity. The primary flux is nearly omnidirectional and  
 2327 therefore a complete description of primary cosmic-ray access to the  
 2328 Earth requires calculation of cutoff rigidities for all angles of incidence  
 2329 (Clem et al., 1997). The reliability of  $R_c$  has been confirmed by num-  
 2330 erous sea level latitude surveys (Moraal et al., 1989; Dorman et al.,  
 2331 2000).

2332 Because direct measurements of the cosmic-ray intensity are col-  
 2333 lected in the present-day geomagnetic field, they should properly be  
 2334 ordered according to  $R_c$ . Unfortunately,  $R_c$  cannot be accurately cal-  
 2335 culated for the past 200–10 000 years because the geomagnetic field  
 2336 parameters are not known. However, if the long-term (>10 000 years)  
 2337 behaviour of the Earth’s magnetic field can be approximated by an axial  
 2338 dipole field, as is often assumed (Fraser-Smith, 1985) then geomagnetic  
 2339 latitude is equivalent to geographic latitude over the long-term and  $R_c$   
 2340 can be estimated (Desilets et al., 2001).

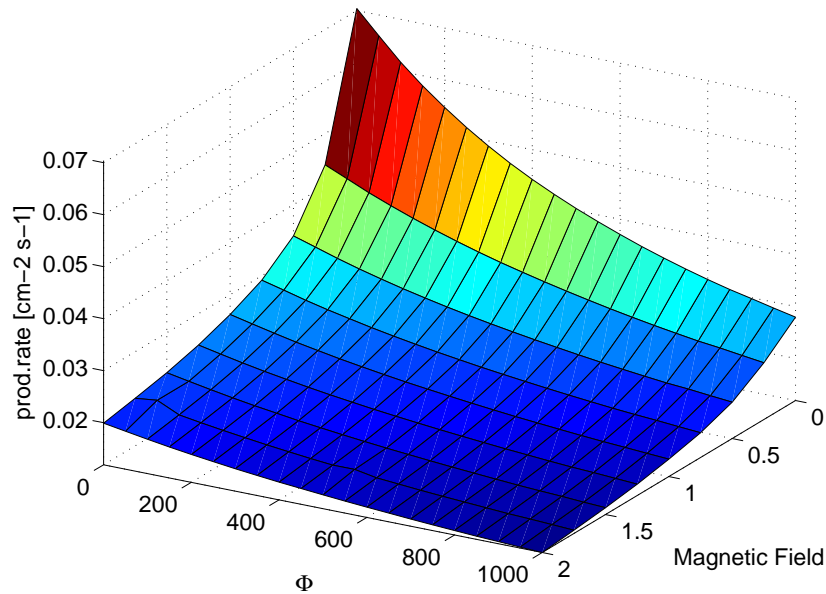


Figure 42. Dependence of the mean global production rate of  $^{10}\text{Be}$  in the Earth's atmosphere on the geomagnetic field intensity and solar modulation parameter  $\Phi$ . The dynamic range of the production rate between extreme situations (no solar modulation, no magnetic field and high solar modulation, doubled magnetic field intensity) is almost an order of magnitude.

2341 In order to adjust our CRF data to a common time line, we need  
 2342 to be able to predict the relative variation in terrestrial cosmic-ray  
 2343 flux with solar modulation. Hence, we have attempted to quantify  
 2344 the variation of production rates as a function of solar modulation  
 2345 and geomagnetic field intensity. In order to investigate the influence of  
 2346 geomagnetic field variations on particle fluxes and cosmogenic nuclide  
 2347 production rates, the relative intensity of the geomagnetic field was  
 2348 varied from 0 to 2 relative to the present field, in steps of 0.25. The  
 2349 shape of the field was left unchanged. The resulting dependence is given  
 2350 in Fig. 42.

### 2351 13.5. CROSS SECTIONS FOR COSMOGENIC NUCLIDE PRODUCTION

2352 The main target elements in the atmosphere are nitrogen, oxygen and  
 2353 argon. For reactions on oxygen, the same cross sections were used as in  
 2354 the case of extraterrestrial material (Masarik and Reedy, 1994; Reedy  
 2355 and Masarik, 1994). For nuclear reactions on nitrogen and argon, ex-  
 2356 perimental cross sections were used whenever possible. Otherwise they

2357 were estimated from similar reactions on other isotopes. For the tritium  
2358 production the cross sections of Nir et al. (1966) were applied.

2359 With the development of AMS also the production rates of some  
2360 other nuclides, like  $^{26}\text{Al}$ ,  $^{22}\text{Na}$ , and  $^{32}\text{Si}$ , were measured. We did not  
2361 calculate their production rates because there are no reliable cross sec-  
2362 tions available for them. Our calculated particle fluxes are accessible on  
2363 the Web and can be used to calculate the production of any radionuclide  
2364 provided the corresponding cross sections are available.

2365 The uncertainties of the cross sections for nitrogen and argon are  
2366 difficult to estimate because they have not been tested in extraterres-  
2367 trial materials. The uncertainties of proton cross sections are probably  
2368 within their measuring errors, which are usually below 10% for the  
2369 latest data and 20% or even more for older data. The uncertainties  
2370 in evaluated cross sections for neutron-induced reactions are unknown,  
2371 but probably less than 50%. The reported uncertainties for the mea-  
2372 sured neutron cross sections are on the level of 25%. The lack of precise  
2373 cross sections for the production of different nuclei from the target ele-  
2374 ments of interest represents the largest contribution to the uncertainty  
2375 of these calculations.

2376

## Part VII

2377

# Cosmic Ray Imprints in Terrestrial Archives and Their Implications to Climate

2378

2379

2380





2381

## 14. Imprints in Earth's archives

2382 Planets and moons are potential archives to store changes of the local  
 2383 interstellar medium over eons, with the Earth as a special archive. A  
 2384 major problem with the terrestrial archives, however, is the multiple  
 2385 influences of the complex geological and climatological processes, which  
 2386 make it hard to disentangle them and interstellar-terrestrial relations.  
 2387 Nonetheless, ice cores, sediments, tree rings, etc. are the only archives  
 2388 accessible without spacecraft. The best studied data sets are provided  
 2389 by the  $^{14}\text{C}$  and  $^{10}\text{Be}$  isotopes.  $^{14}\text{C}$  is produced by the capture of a ther-  
 2390 mal neutron from the interaction of cosmic rays with the atmosphere  
 2391 (see part VI) in the reaction  $^{14}\text{N}(n, p)^{14}\text{C}$ , while  $^{10}\text{Be}$  is a spallation  
 2392 product from nitrogen and oxygen. Both atoms quickly oxidize to C  
 2393  $\text{O}_2$  and Be O. The advantage of archives with these isotopes is their  
 2394 relatively high production rate ( $2.2 \text{ atoms cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$  for  $^{14}\text{C}$  and  $0.02$   
 2395  $\text{atoms cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$  for  $^{10}\text{Be}$ ) and their long half-lives ( $^{14}\text{C} \approx 5730 \text{ yr}$  and  
 2396  $^{10}\text{Be} \approx 1.5 \text{ kyr}$ ).

2397 The two corresponding time series are not directly comparable, be-  
 2398 cause  $^{10}\text{Be}$  is bound by aerosols and washed out subsequently by pre-  
 2399 cipitation within about year. In view of this short time scale, it serves  
 2400 as a tracer for a more regional production. The latter is higher over the  
 2401 magnetic poles, because the cosmic rays can deeper penetrate into the  
 2402 atmosphere following the magnetic field lines (see sec. 12). Therefore,  
 2403  $^{10}\text{Be}$  records may be best observed at high geo-magnetic latitudes, i.e.  
 2404 in polar ice-cores.  $^{14}\text{C}$  oxidizes into atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  which is con-  
 2405 nected to larger reservoirs and is deposited on a global scale due to the  
 2406 longer deposition time scale (Kocharov, 1991; Bard et al., 1997). These  
 2407 differences are shown in Fig. 43.

2408 The solar cycle variations are clearly seen in Fig. 44. The two year  
 2409 delay of the  $^{10}\text{Be}$  curve compared to that of the sunspot number is in  
 2410 good agreement with the lag of one year of the CR modulation and the  
 2411 one year atmospheric residence time.

2412 The  $^{10}\text{Be}$  records can be extended into the past, but the data analysis  
 2413 becomes more difficult and will not be discussed here see, e.g. (Beer  
 2414 et al., 1991). Nevertheless, the  $^{10}\text{Be}$  records have been used to recon-  
 2415 struct the sunspot numbers as proxy for the solar cycle variations in the  
 2416 past, therefore, allow to estimate the CR-fluxes at Earth orbit. This in  
 2417 turn allows a reconstruction of the structure of the heliospheric shield  
 2418 in the past, or in other words, it should be possible to get observational  
 2419 hints on the history of the interstellar environmental changes (Scherer,  
 2420 2000; Scherer et al., 2001a; Florinski and Zank, 2005).

2421 Additional information can be gained from the  $^{14}\text{C}$  records (radio-  
 2422 carbon) sampled from tree rings or other organics. There the problem

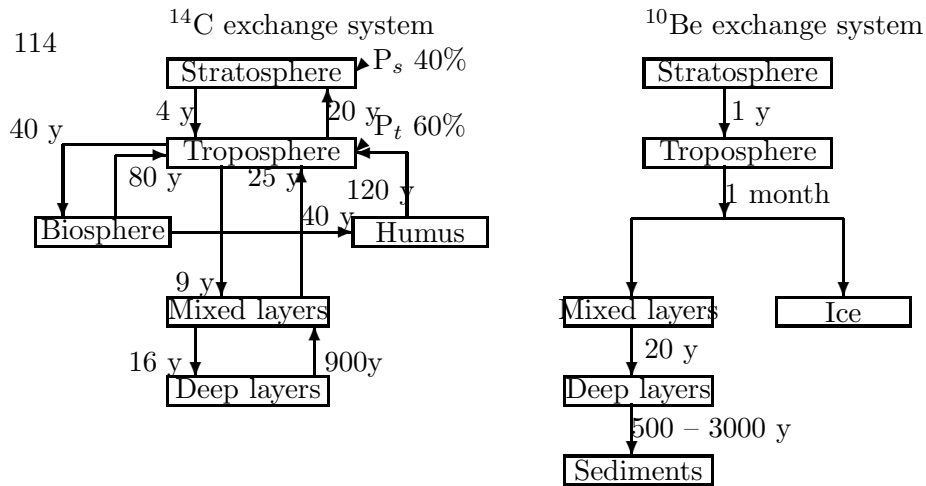


Figure 43. Difference in the  $^{14}\text{C}$  and  $^{10}\text{Be}$  transport from the atmosphere into archives. The figure gives the transfer times, and in the case of  $^{14}\text{C}$  the relative production rates in the stratosphere  $P_s$  and in the troposphere  $P_t$  are presented.

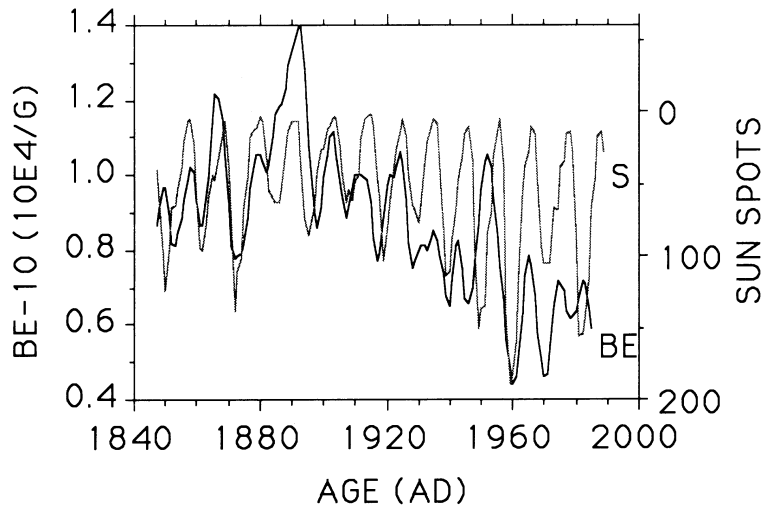


Figure 44. Solar cycle variation of  $^{10}\text{Be}$  (thick line). The  $^{10}\text{Be}$  data have been shifted by two years. The thin line is the smoothed sunspot number (Beer et al., 1991).

2423 arises that the  $^{14}\text{C}$  records are anticorrelated with the magnetic moment of the Earth, as indicated in Fig. 14. The data can be detrended  
 2424 and then show a nearly periodic behavior anticorrelated to the solar  
 2425 activity cycle.  
 2426

2427 Also for the centennial time scale exist indications of variable cosmic  
 2428 ray fluxes. An example is shown in Fig. 46, where it is evident that  
 2429 during the Maunder Minimum the production of cosmogenic  $^{14}\text{C}$  has

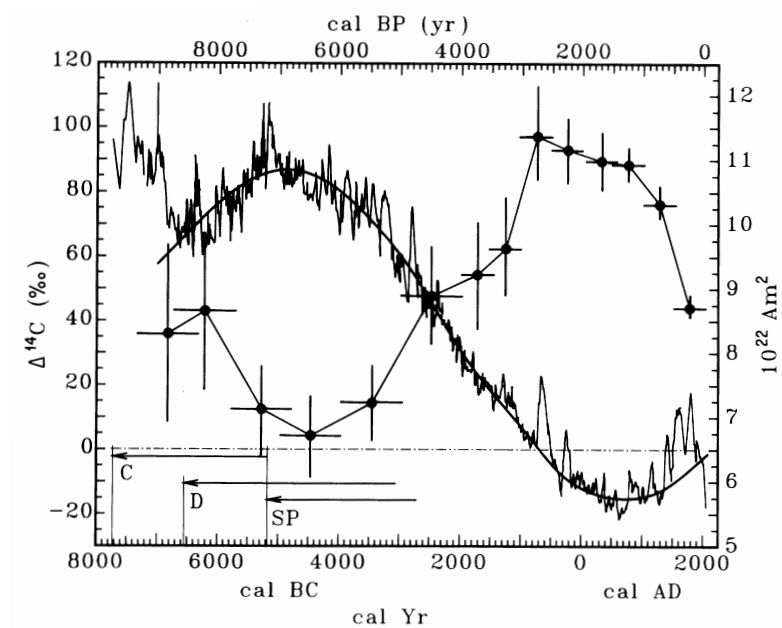


Figure 45. The  $^{14}\text{C}$  variation for the last 10 kyr. The crosses indicate the dipole moment (Damon and Sonett, 1991).

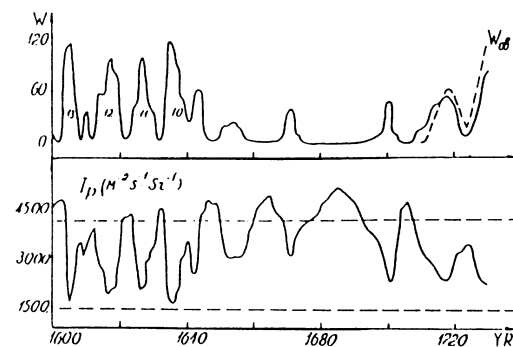


Figure 46. The sunspot number (upper panel) and the cosmic ray intensity (lower panel) during the Maunder Minimum (Kocharov, 1991).

2430 been significantly higher indicating that the cosmic ray fluxes have been  
 2431 much higher, too (McCracken and McDonald, 2001).

2432 During that period the climate was quite cold, which fits into the  
 2433 chain of argumentation, that a higher cosmic ray flux causes a higher  
 2434 cloudiness, which then reflects more radiation back into the space. This  
 2435 kind of climate forcing was also discussed recently by van Geel et al.,  
 2436 van Geel et al. (1998, 1999a), who explained a local climate change

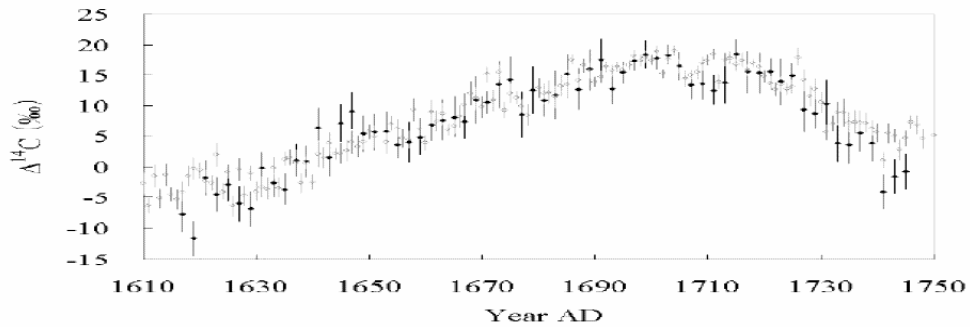


Figure 47. The  $^{14}\text{C}$  enhancement during the Maunder Minimum, as consequence of a higher CRF (taken from Miyahara et al. (2005)).

2437 850 calendar years BC and the simultaneous rise in  $^{14}\text{C}$  and will be  
2438 continued in the next section.

2439 First modulation models (see sections 9 and 10) to explain the  
2440 cosmic ray flux enhancements during the Grand minima have been  
2441 developed by Scherer and Fichtner (2004) and Caballero-Lopez et al.  
2442 (2004). It was found, that the spatial structure of the outer heliosphere  
2443 in the Grand Minima is not so important, but rather the changes in  
2444 the heliospheric magnetic field, which is the continuation of the solar  
2445 surface magnetic field.

2446

## 15. Implications to Climate

2447 The principal source of energy that drives the dynamics of the outer  
2448 spheres of our planet, including its climate, is unquestionably our Sun,  
2449 and it is the electromagnetic radiation that overwhelmingly dominates  
2450 energy exchange between the Earth and its cosmic environment. The  
2451 equation for global planetary energy equilibrium (Kandel and Viollier,  
2452 2005) can be written as:

$$T_s = \left( \frac{(1 - A) \frac{S_0}{4r_\odot^2} + P}{\sigma(1 - g)} \right)^{1/4} \quad (54)$$

2453 where  $T_s$  is surface temperature,  $A$  the Bond albedo,  $S_0$  the solar “con-  
2454 stant”,  $r_\odot$  the distance from the Sun,  $P$  the internal planetary energy  
2455 production (crustal heat flow),  $\sigma$  the Stefan-Boltzmann constant, and  
2456  $g$  the normalized greenhouse factor. The quantities  $S_0$  and  $r_\odot$  are as-  
2457 tronomical while the  $A$ ,  $T_s$ ,  $g$  and  $P$  should be regarded as parameters  
2458 of the planet’s global system. The planetary surface temperature  $T_s$  is

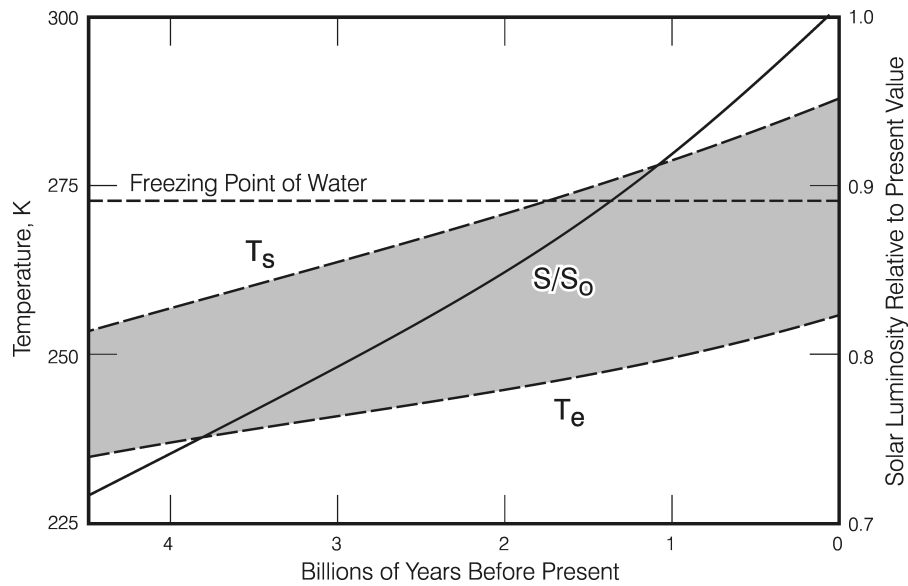


Figure 48. Evolution of solar luminosity ( $S/S_0$ ) normalized to today and the respective black body ( $T_e$ ) and greenhouse augmented ( $T_s$ ) temperature over geologic history. Adapted from (2005).

2459 controlled essentially by its albedo  $A$  and normalized greenhouse factor  
 2460  $g$  ( $P$  being negligible at  $0.086 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ ), which can be externally forced  
 2461 by natural and/or anthropogenic perturbations.

2462 The short wave energy flux from the Sun that reaches the upper  
 2463 atmosphere is  $342 \text{ Watts per square meter } (\text{W m}^{-2})$ , with  $\approx 77 \text{ W m}^{-2}$   
 2464 reflected back into space by the atmosphere and clouds and  $\approx 30 \text{ W m}^{-2}$   
 2465 by the Earth surface (Baede et al., 2001). At a radiative balance of  
 2466  $235 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  the Earth would have an average surface temperature of  
 2467 only  $-19^\circ \text{ C}$ , resulting in a perpetually frozen planet (Ruddiman, 2001).  
 2468 Moreover, the standard solar model (Gough, 1981) predicts that the  
 2469 luminosity of the Sun 4.6 billion years (Ga) ago was only  $\approx 70\%$  of the  
 2470 present value and increased ever since due to the advancing conversion  
 2471 of hydrogen to helium in its core (Fig. 48), making the early planet  
 2472 even more inhospitable to life. Yet the geologic record tells us that the  
 2473 planet had running water from at least 3.8 Ga ago (Windley, 1984) and  
 2474 abundant life since at least 3.5 Ga ago (Schopf, 1983). Its climate must  
 2475 have been therefore equable, not that much different from present-day  
 2476 conditions.

2477 The saving grace is the existence of the planetary atmosphere which  
 2478 traps sufficient long wave energy, reradiated by the warm Earth's sur-  
 2479 face ("natural greenhouse effect"); to raise the surface temperature,  
 2480 today by  $\approx 33^\circ \text{ C}$ , to a comfortable average of  $14^\circ \text{ C}$ . This "natural"

2481 greenhouse effect is overwhelmingly due to water vapour, the princi-  
 2482 pal greenhouse gas, and only to a lesser degree to other greenhouse  
 2483 gases (GHG), such as CO<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>4</sub>, N<sub>2</sub>O or CFCs. The global water  
 2484 cycle plays therefore the dominant role, in some estimates up to 90  
 2485 – 95% in the magnitude of the “greenhouse” effect. It also is the major  
 2486 player in the global transfer of energy from the equator to the poles, a  
 2487 redistribution that is responsible for vagaries of regional climates. The  
 2488 “anthropogenic” addition of GHG, principally CO<sub>2</sub>, since the advent  
 2489 of the industrial revolution, is believed to have enhanced the natural  
 2490 greenhouse effect by  $\approx 2.5 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  (Ramaswamy et al., 2001). For com-  
 2491 parison, satellite data for less than a decade (1995–2002) suggest a  
 2492 decline in the cloud albedo by  $\approx 7\%$  (Kandel and Viollier, 2005; their  
 2493 Fig. 3b), consistent with a  $2 - 6 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  enhancement of the short  
 2494 wave solar energy input into the system (Pallé et al., 2005; Wild et al.,  
 2495 2005). The current scientific and political dispute boils down ultimately  
 2496 to the following: is the additional energy that is responsible for the  
 2497 centennial temperature rise of  $\approx 0.6^\circ \text{ C}$  due principally to GHG or is  
 2498 it due to some external factor, such as the Sun? Note that we are  
 2499 not dealing with mutually exclusive scenarios. Climate models would  
 2500 respond in a similar way to the addition of energy from any source  
 2501 and it is only the relative importance of these potential “drivers”, at  
 2502 a variety of time scales, which is the contentious issue. Note also that,  
 2503 compared to the sizes of the global energy fluxes, and their overall  
 2504 uncertainty of the order  $\pm 6 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ , the apparent centennial to annual  
 2505 trends are at the limit of detectability (Kandel and Viollier, 2005). It  
 2506 is therefore not likely that the issue of principal climate driver can be  
 2507 resolved by energy balance considerations. Instead, observations based  
 2508 on past climate trends and their compatibility with the celestial vs  
 2509 GHG records may help to resolve their relative contributions.

#### 2510 15.1. CELESTIAL CLIMATE DRIVERS AND AMPLIFIERS

2511 Considering that the “consensus” view (IPCC, 2001) favours CO<sub>2</sub> as  
 2512 the principal climate driver on most (Ruddiman, 2001), or at least  
 2513 the human, time scales, it is important to ask what is the “sensitiv-  
 2514 ity” of climate to doubling of CO<sub>2</sub> from its “pre-industrial” value of  
 2515  $\approx 280 \text{ ppm}$ . Direct radiative forcing of  $4 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ , attributed to CO<sub>2</sub>  
 2516 doubling, should theoretically increase the global temperature by  $\approx 1.25^\circ \text{ C}$ ,  
 2517 short of the predictions by general circulation models (GCMs) of  $1.5 -$   
 2518  $5.5^\circ \text{ C}$ . Similarly, direct empirical surface measurements show a cen-  
 2519 tennial temperature rise of only  $\approx 0.6^\circ \text{ C}$  (IPCC, 2001), of which  $\approx 1/3$   
 2520 is attributed to the observed increase in solar brightness. The “an-  
 2521 thropogenic” greenhouse effect, of  $\approx 80 - 100 \text{ ppm CO}_2$ , should thus

2522 account for  $\approx 0.4^\circ\text{C}$ . An extrapolation of these empirical data to  $\text{CO}_2$   
2523 doubling would therefore suggest that the real climate sensitivity to  
2524  $\text{CO}_2$  is closer to, or below, the minimal model predictions of  $1.5^\circ\text{C}$   
2525 (Shaviv, 2005), consistent with the direct satellite and balloon obser-  
2526 vations for the mid-lower troposphere (Sherwood et al., 2005; Mears  
2527 and Wentz, 2005; Pinker et al., 2005). The amplification of tempera-  
2528 tures in GCMs is thus mostly due to the “positive feedback” of higher  
2529 atmospheric water vapour concentrations, and the large spread in their  
2530 predictions reflects essentially the differences in model parameterization  
2531 of clouds.

2532 The attribution of only  $\approx 1/3$  of the centennial temperature rise  
2533 to solar forcing (Mitchell et al., 2001), despite very good correlation,  
2534 is based on the empirical observation that averaged over the 11-year  
2535 solar cycle the Total Solar Irradiance (TSI) variability is only 0.1%  
2536 ( $1.5\text{ W m}^{-2}$ ) per 11-year solar cycle (Lean, 2005), insufficient to ac-  
2537 count for the  $0.6^\circ\text{C}$  centennial temperature rise in the GCMs. An  
2538 amplifier related to solar dynamics would therefore be required to ex-  
2539 plain the entire magnitude of the trend and the 1980–2002 satellite  
2540 data (Scafetta and West, 2005; Scafetta and West, 2006) indeed show  
2541 that the response to the 11-year TSI cycle is 1.5–3 times larger than in  
2542 the GCM predictions. The galactic cosmic ray (GCR) flux was briefly  
2543 considered to be such an amplifier, but dismissed because of the lack of  
2544 understanding of physical processes, particularly cloud formation, that  
2545 could point to a climate connection (Ramaswamy et al., 2001).

2546 Recently, however, a spate of empirical observations demonstrates  
2547 that the “Sun-climate connection is apparent in a plethora of high-  
2548 fidelity climate indicators” (Lean, 2005), such as surface temperatures,  
2549 cloud cover, drought, rainfall, cyclones, forest fires . . . This does sug-  
2550 gest the existence of an amplifier related to the muted changes in the  
2551 solar luminosity “constant”. That observational evidence supports the  
2552 presence of the 11-year solar signal in the dynamics of the stratosphere  
2553 and troposphere is confirmed also in the Hadley Centre review of Gray  
2554 et al. (2005). In the stratosphere, it modulates the temperature and  
2555 ozone levels. In the troposphere, during the solar maximum, the sub-  
2556 tropical jets are weakened and shifted polewards and the pattern of the  
2557 North Atlantic Oscillation index (NAO) extends over Eurasia. While  
2558 the impact of direct solar radiative forcing relative to amplification  
2559 of TSI by indirect mechanisms is still a subject of debate, the detec-  
2560 tion/attribution assessments of climate models “suggest that the solar  
2561 influence on climate is greater than would be anticipated from radiative  
2562 forcing estimates. This implies that either the radiative forcing is un-  
2563 derestimated or there are some processes inadequately represented in

2564 those models” (Gray et al., 2005). If so, climate modulation by indirect  
2565 amplifying mechanisms may play an important role.

2566 Ozone and temperature anomalies in the stratosphere, generated by  
2567 the UV spectral portion of the TSI flux (Haigh, 1994; Shindell et al.,  
2568 1999; Labitzke et al., 2002), were proposed as such potential indirect  
2569 mechanisms. However, the existing models apparently do not simulate  
2570 well the propagation of these anomalies into the troposphere (Gray  
2571 et al., 2005).

2572 Considering that the aa index of geomagnetic activity (Prestes et al.,  
2573 2006) and the GCR flux (sections 8, 12; Sabbah and Rybanský, 2006)  
2574 also reflect the 11-year solar cycle, scenarios that implicate magnetic  
2575 fields and electrical circuitries of the Sun and the Earth in climate  
2576 modulation appear to be more promising amplifying candidates, be-  
2577 cause high-energy particles, such as GCR and solar protons, during  
2578 their passage through the Earth’s atmosphere and magnetosphere can  
2579 trigger processes that affect the planetary radiative balance. The most  
2580 likely pathway for translation of the high energy particle flux into a  
2581 climate variable involves the role of clouds (Marsh and Svensmark,  
2582 2000a; Usoskin et al., 2004a; Harrison and Stephenson, 2006), since the  
2583 “GCR have been shown to be closely correlated with continuous satel-  
2584 lite (ISCCP) retrieval of low cloud cover from 1983-1994, and possibly  
2585 to 2001” (Gray et al., 2005). Considering that solar radiation reflected  
2586 by the atmosphere (and albedo of clouds) accounts for  $\approx 77 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ ,  
2587 that climate models may underestimate the tropospheric short wave  
2588 absorption by up to  $30 - 40 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ , and that evapotranspiration and  
2589 precipitation each account for  $78 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  (Baede et al., 2001; Stocker  
2590 et al., 2001), a change in cloudiness of only a few percent could poten-  
2591 tially alter the planetary energy balance by as much as the proposed  
2592 anthropogenic GHG effect ( $2.5 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ ).

2593 Despite the fact that “modeling and observation now support at-  
2594 mospheric production of ultra-fine aerosols from cosmic ray produced  
2595 ions” (Gray et al., 2005) and despite the ‘theory (that) shows that  
2596 charged aerosols are preferentially removed by cloud droplets, present-  
2597 ing the possibility of a long-range influence (on climate) through the  
2598 global electrical circuit, the physics of the processes resulting in cloud  
2599 nucleation is still a hotly debated issue. The proposed mechanisms may  
2600 involve (1) aerosol microphysics, such as particle nucleation, coagula-  
2601 tion and scavenging (Yu, 2002) in response to GCR flux, (2) charging of  
2602 aerosol particles and droplets at particle and cloud boundaries related  
2603 to the global electrical circuit and their removal to cloud droplets (elec-  
2604 trofreezing, electroscavenging) (Tinsley and Yu, 2004), and (3) other  
2605 potential mechanisms or any combination of the above (see Gray et al.,  
2606 2005 for a review). The growth of charged molecular clusters from



2607 ultrafine aerosols, essential as an intermediate step in the formation  
2608 of cloud condensation nuclei (CCN), is likely catalyzed by hygroscopic  
2609  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  aerosols (Carslaw et al., 2002; Lee, 2003). Cloud formation by  
2610 this scenario may therefore require spatial convergence of all these  
2611 variables (GCR, water vapour, and natural as well as anthropogenic  
2612 aerosols) in the troposphere.

## 2613 15.2. TERRESTRIAL ARCHIVES

2614 Accepting that celestial and GHG forcings of climate are not mutually  
2615 exclusive, but complementary drivers, addition of energy from either  
2616 source would lead to a quasi-similar model outcome. Note that it is  
2617 not the actual  $\text{CO}_2$  that is embedded in most GCMs, but its assumed  
2618 energy equivalent, the “prescribed  $\text{CO}_2$ ”. Unfortunately, both alterna-  
2619 tives, celestial as well as GHG, suffer from the same deficiency, poorly  
2620 understood physics of clouds that hampers modeling of the water cycle,  
2621 even so it is this cycle acts as a major thermostat n climate regulation.  
2622 In an effort to shed some light on the issue by empirical observations,  
2623 the subsequent sections will juxtapose the signals of these complemen-  
2624 tary drivers, as presently known from terrestrial archives across the  
2625 entire terrestrial time/space hierarchy, from resolution of billions of  
2626 years to human time scales.

2627 The direct instrumental record of global temperature is known for  
2628 only about a century and satellite measurements of TSI, cloud param-  
2629 eters and atmospheric GHG concentrations are available for only a  
2630 few decades. For longer time scales, we have to rely on proxies. These  
2631 include concentrations of GHGs occluded in, and oxygen/hydrogen  
2632 isotope paleotemperatures calculated from, the polar ice caps which  
2633 enables observation of the climate/GHG relationship over the past  
2634  $\approx 400\,000$  (and potentially  $650\,000$ ) years (Siegenthaler et al., 2005).  
2635 In contrast, apart from sunspot numbers that are known for several  
2636 centuries, we have no direct proxies for TSI and no record of clouds.  
2637 Fortunately, the energetic particles of the GCR during their interaction  
2638 with the atmosphere produce the so-called cosmogenic nuclides, such  
2639 as  $^{10}\text{Be}$ ,  $^{14}\text{C}$ ,  $^{36}\text{Cl}$  (sections 12, 13), and these can be measured in  
2640 terrestrial archives such as ice, trees, and sediments. Because the GCR  
2641 flux reaching the Earth is inversely proportional to the intensity of the  
2642 sun (and the intensity of the heliospheric shield), the concentration of  
2643 these radioisotopes can be utilised as a proxy for TSI and potentially  
2644 cloudiness. Note that the utility of the  $^{14}\text{C}$  and  $^{10}\text{Be}$  records peters out  
2645 at  $\approx 40\,000$  and  $\approx 300\,000$  years, respectively (Frank, 2000). The utility  
2646 of cosmogenic nuclides as proxies for TSI is further complicated by the  
2647 fact that on time scales exceeding the decadal solar cycles, the GCR flux

2648 is attenuated also by the geomagnetic field that varies in intensity. Its  
 2649 variation is relatively well known for the last 800 000 years (Guyodo and  
 2650 Valet, 1999) and less so for the last 2 million years (Valet et al., 2005).  
 2651 Thus, unless the geomagnetic and heliomagnetic fields are somehow  
 2652 coupled, the extraction of TSI from these proxy signals may require  
 2653 correction for GCR attenuation by the geomagnetic field (section 13).  
 2654 In that case, the TSI/climate (or global temperature) scaling parameter  
 2655 over longer time scales may also vary (Gray et al., 2005).

2656 The complementary oceanic temperature record for centennial to  
 2657 millennial and low million-year (Tertiary) time scales is available from  
 2658 numerous studies on calcitic shells of foraminifera that were the out-  
 2659 come of the Deep Sea Drilling Programme (e.g. Ruddiman, 2001). Po-  
 2660 tentially, this approach can yield a record even for the entire Phanero-  
 2661 zoic (Veizer et al., 2000), albeit constrained by the limitations of geochronol-  
 2662 ogy and biostratigraphy. A comparable record for GCR flux can eventu-  
 2663 ally also be quantified via data on exposure ages in meteorites (section  
 2664 6).

### 2665 15.3. PALEOCLIMATE ON BILLION YEAR TIME SCALES

2666 Accepting the validity of the standard solar model, the Earth –even  
 2667 with the contribution from the greenhouse–should have been a frozen  
 2668 body until about 1 Ga ago (Fig. 48). Yet, the sedimentary record  
 2669 (Windley, 1984) demonstrates convincingly the existence of open water  
 2670 bodies and streams, hence at least benign climate, during the entire  
 2671 Precambrian. Some authors (e.g. Knauth and Lowe, 2003) even ar-  
 2672 gued that the declining  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  values in ancient cherts and carbonates  
 2673 (Fig. 49) indicates that the Archean oceans may have been as warm as  
 2674  $\approx 70\pm 15^\circ\text{C}$ , but the clear evidence for ice ages at  $\approx 2.9$  Ga, 2.2–2.4 Ga  
 2675 and since  $\approx 0.7$  Ga ago (Frakes et al., 1992; Young et al., 1998) rules  
 2676 out such an interpretation. Ice ages may have coexisted with temperate  
 2677 oceans, but not with the hot ones.

2678 In order to resolve the “faint young Sun” conundrum, it was argued  
 2679 that the benign planetary surface temperatures were maintained by a  
 2680 supergreenhouse of  $\text{CO}_2$ ,  $\text{NH}_3$  or  $\text{CH}_4$ . Unfortunately, the atmospheric  
 2681  $\text{CO}_2$  levels required to counter the lower solar luminosity are up to 104  
 2682 times higher than the modern values (Kasting, 1993) and this would  
 2683 result in a pH of the oceans  $\approx 2$ -3 units lower than today. Tempera-  
 2684 ture and pH both affect the  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  of marine carbonate minerals, but  
 2685 have opposing effects of similar magnitude, essentially canceling each  
 2686 other. The downward  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  trend (Fig. 49) is therefore unlikely to be  
 2687 an outcome of the hot “ $\text{CO}_2$  greenhouse” oceans, but rather of the  
 2688 changing oxygen isotopic composition of seawater (Veizer and et al.,

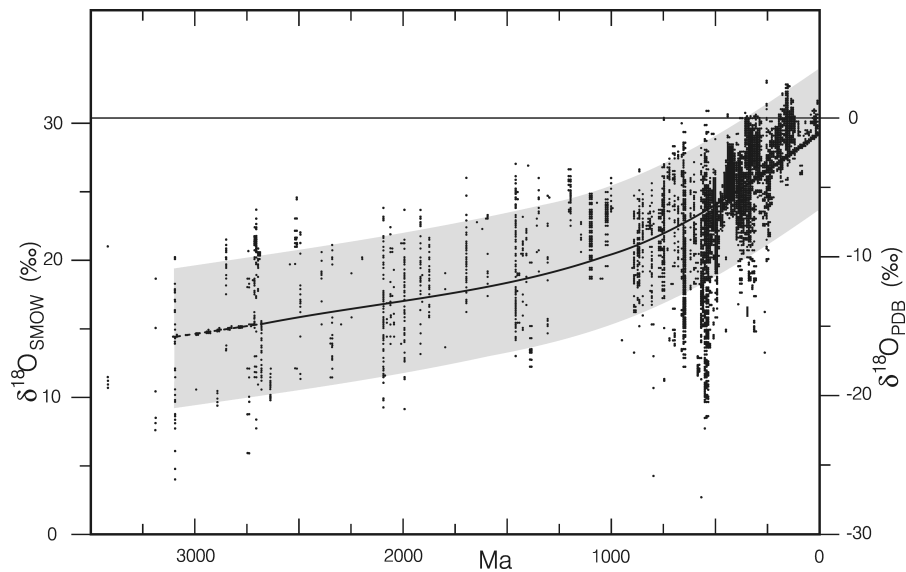


Figure 49. Oxygen isotope record of  $\text{CaCO}_3$  shells and sediments over geologic history ( $n = 9957$ ). The upper envelope is the best approximation of the original signal. Most post-depositional processes tend to shift the  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  to more negative values and the bulk of the observed spread is due to this cause. Adapted from Shields and Veizer (2002).

2689 1999; Veizer and Mackenzie, 2004). The alternative proposition of a  
 2690  $\text{CH}_4$  or  $\text{NH}_3$  greenhouse (Sagan and Chyba, 1997; Kasting and Ono,  
 2691 2005) faces the problem that such greenhouses could have been sus-  
 2692 tained only in an oxygen-free ocean/atmosphere system. This may have  
 2693 been theoretically feasible for the young Earth, up to  $\approx 2.4$  Ga ago, but  
 2694 not subsequently because the surficial environments were sufficiently  
 2695 oxidized (Holland, 1984).

2696 In an alternative explanation Shaviv (2003b) invoked the impact of  
 2697 a stronger solar wind from the young Sun, coupled with the changing  
 2698 galactic star formation rates, to vary the intensity of the CRF into the  
 2699 terrestrial atmosphere. His model calculations, based on the acceptance  
 2700 of the CRF/climate causation, suggest that the celestial scenario could  
 2701 explain  $\approx 2/3$  of the dim Sun anomaly, with the remainder ameliorated  
 2702 perhaps by modestly higher GHG levels. Moreover, star formation rates  
 2703 in the Milky Way galaxy are believed to have been high  $\approx 3-2$  Ga ago  
 2704 and during the last 1 Ga, but muted in the intervening 2-1 Ga interval  
 2705 (section 6). This would have been mirrored in the temporal evolution of  
 2706 the GCR flux, and cloud albedo, resulting in cooling  $\approx 3-2$  and  $< 1$  Ga  
 2707 ago and warming during the 2-1 Ga interval. The enigmatic absence  
 2708 of any indication of cold climate during this protracted 2-1 Ga warm

2709 interval, preceded and followed by planetary glaciations, is consistent  
2710 with such a scenario.

#### 2711 15.4. PALEOCLIMATE ON MILLION YEAR TIME SCALES

2712 The geological record of the Phanerozoic, the last 545 million years,  
2713 is replete with shelly fossils. Utilising biostratigraphy, it has better  
2714 temporal resolution than the Precambrian, particularly for the younger  
2715 time intervals. However, as a unit, its average resolution is somewhere  
2716 between 1 and 5 Ma, due mostly to difficulties in correlating the highly  
2717 incomplete sedimentary sequences across the globe. The record, inte-  
2718 grated over the 1–5 Ma bins, shows intervals of  $10^7$ -year duration with  
2719 predominantly, but not exclusively, warm and cold climates, called  
2720 greenhouses and icehouses, respectively (Frakes et al., 1992). Eval-  
2721 uation of the temporal and spatial distribution of climate sensitive  
2722 sediments and fossil assemblages, as recorded in paleogeographic maps,  
2723 shows a structure of 4 greenhouse/icehouse intervals (Fig. 50), alter-  
2724 nating with  $\approx 140$  Ma periodicity. This paleoclimate trend coincides, in  
2725 phase and amplitude, with the detrended  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  signal of the paleotem-  
2726 perature (based on the calcitic shells of marine fossils), as well as with  
2727 the variations in the intensity of the GCR-flux (Shaviv and Veizer,  
2728 2003; de la Fuente Marcos and de la Fuente Marcos, 2004; Gies and  
2729 Helsel, 2005). All these observations are consistent with the proposition  
2730 that celestial forcing is the primary climate driver on multimillion-  
2731 year time scales, the icehouses coincident with the passages of the  
2732 heliosphere through the arms of the Milky Way galaxy. The dense  
2733 population of young stars in galactic arms, hence enhanced GCR-flux  
2734 and cloud albedo, are postulated to have been the causes of planetary  
2735 cooling (Shaviv, 2002 and see part III).

2736 In contrast to the celestial scenario, the model and proxy based  
2737 estimates of atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  levels for the Phanerozoic (Fig. 50) do  
2738 not show any correlation with the paleoclimate picture that emerged  
2739 from geological criteria (Veizer, 2005). While a correlation may exist  
2740 for some partial intervals (e.g. Pagani et al., 2005), this is not the  
2741 case for the Phanerozoic as a unit. Note also that any translation of  
2742 proxy signals into Phanerozoic atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  levels is beset by large  
2743 uncertainties (Royer et al., 2001). Similarly, no convincing correlation  
2744 exists between tectonic phenomena, such as the dispersal/reassembly  
2745 of continents or seafloor spreading rates. Neither the GHG nor tectonic  
2746 forcing is therefore likely to have been the primary climate driver on  
2747 Phanerozoic time scales.

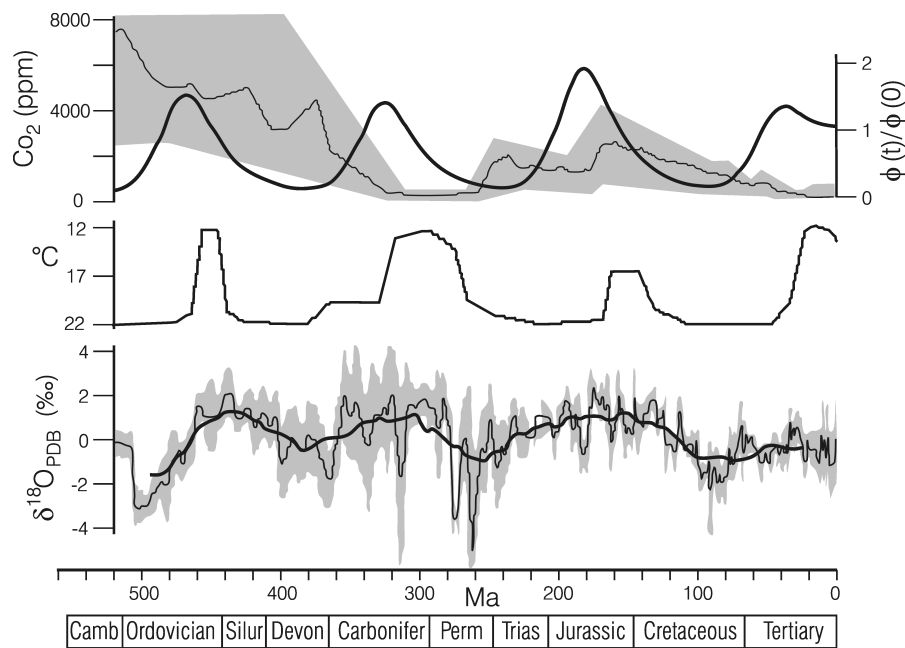


Figure 50. Phanerozoic climate history. Top: Thin line and shading: atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  and the estimated ranges for the GEOCARB III model (Berner and Kothval, 2001); thick line: normalized cosmic ray flux (Shaviv and Veizer, 2003); Middle: Paleoclimate interpretation based on the paleogeographic distribution of climate sensitive sediments and fossils ([www.scotese.com/climate.htm](http://www.scotese.com/climate.htm); figure 1 in Boucot and Gray (2001)); Bottom: Brachiopod, belemnite and planktonic foraminifera  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  isotope time-series ( $N = 4775$ ) plotted in the Harland et al. (1990) time scale. The data are Gaussian filtered with  $\pm 1\sigma$  uncertainty (dashed lines) and the linear trend (Veizer and et al., 1999) is removed. The thick line marks the moving average for 50 Ma window.

#### 2748 15.5. PALEOCLIMATE ON MULTIMILLENIAL TIME SCALES

2749 The time scales in the  $10^4 - 10^5$  year range fall into the band of Mi-  
 2750 lankovitch frequencies. The response of terrestrial climate to orbital  
 2751 parameters is assumed to have been proportional at any instant to the  
 2752 magnitude of summer insolation at  $65^\circ\text{N}$ , with  $\approx 413\,000$  and  $\approx 100\,000$   
 2753 year frequencies due to eccentricity,  $\approx 41\,000$  years to tilt and  $\approx 23\,000$   
 2754 years to precession. Assuming near-constant TSI, this orbital modula-  
 2755 tion ( $\pm 12\%$ ) of insolation at the top of Earth's near-polar atmosphere,  
 2756 would not have been sufficient to cause the observed amplitudes of  
 2757 climate variability at high latitudes, and even less so in the equatorial  
 2758 regions. Amplifications by ice sheet dynamics in cold regions and by  
 2759 monsoon dynamics at low latitudes are therefore invoked as solutions  
 2760 (Ruddiman, 2001). The records of such climate oscillations are pre-  
 2761 served in marine sediments, ice cores, cave stalagmites, lake and bog

2762 sediments, pollen data and similar archives. The most comprehensive  
 2763 record, based  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  measured in shells of marine foraminifera, resolves  
 2764 about 50 discrete cycles from  $\approx 2.75$  Ma, the presumed onset of north-  
 2765 ern glaciation (but see (Mudelsee and Raymo, 2005), to 0.9 Ma ago  
 2766 (Fig. 51b), consistent with the tilt as the driving parameter. However,  
 2767 from 0.9 Ma onwards the  $\approx 100\,000$ -year oscillation becomes the dom-  
 2768 inant one (Fig. 51a). The overall agreement of the  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  signal with  
 2769 the orbital parameters is indeed impressive. Note, nevertheless, that  
 2770 the outstanding fit is to some extent due also to the fact that the  
 2771 records were “tuned” to these parameters. This is permissible because  
 2772 of uncertainties in the  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  chronology of  $\pm 5\,000$  years (Martinson  
 2773 et al., 1987), or more for the pre-300 000-year datasets (Imbrie et al.,  
 2774 1984). Another perplexing aspect is the appearance of the 100 000-  
 2775 year quasi-periodicity at  $\approx 0.9$  Ma ago, because the insolation forcing  
 2776 by eccentricity ( $< 1\%$ ; Berger et al., 2005) is negligible. Moreover, its  
 2777 communication to low-latitudes is not understood, but this is a problem  
 2778 that plagues, to some extent, all orbital frequencies (Ruddiman, 2001).  
 2779 Could it be that the signals, or at least the quasi-100 000-year compo-  
 2780 nent, are not driven by orbital parameters? Could internal terrestrial  
 2781 phenomena (e.g. GHG) or external celestial causes (e.g. varying solar  
 2782 activity and/or cosmic ray flux) be the ultimate climate drivers on at  
 2783 least some of these time scales?

2784 At first glance, the GHG proposition squares well with the Antarctic  
 2785 (Petit et al., 1999; Siegenthaler et al., 2005; Spahni et al., 2005) ice core  
 2786 data. The correlations between  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  and  $\delta D$  of ice (climate proxies)  
 2787 and the concentrations of  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{CH}_4$  in enclosed air bubbles are  
 2788 impressive (Fig. 52). However, these correlations are discernible only if  
 2789 viewed at resolutions in excess of 1 000 years. Higher resolution records  
 2790 for all seven glacial terminations studied to this day show that the  
 2791 rise in  $\text{CO}_2$  postdates the warming by several hundred to 2 800 years  
 2792 (Fischer et al., 1999; Monnin et al., 2001; Mudelsee, 2001; Caillon et al.,  
 2793 2003; Vakulenko et al., 2004; Siegenthaler et al., 2005). Consequently,  
 2794  $\text{CO}_2$  is likely a product of the  $\approx 100\,000$ -year climate oscillations, not  
 2795 their cause.

2796 Could it be, therefore, as argued by Muller and MacDonald (1997),  
 2797 that the  $\approx 100\,000$ -year spectral peak is of astronomical origin, albeit  
 2798 forced by celestial driver(s) rather than by planetary orbital paramet-  
 2799 ers? Could varying solar intensity or GCR-flux be the culprit? Such  
 2800 a proposition can be tested because at these time scales we do have  
 2801 preserved records of their proxies, the cosmogenic nuclides, such as  
 2802  $^{10}\text{Be}$ ,  $^{14}\text{C}$  and  $^{36}\text{Cl}$ . These cosmogenic nuclides are generated in the ter-  
 2803 restrial atmosphere by GCR-flux that, in turn, is inversely proportional  
 2804 to the strength of the heliospheric and magnetospheric shields, the

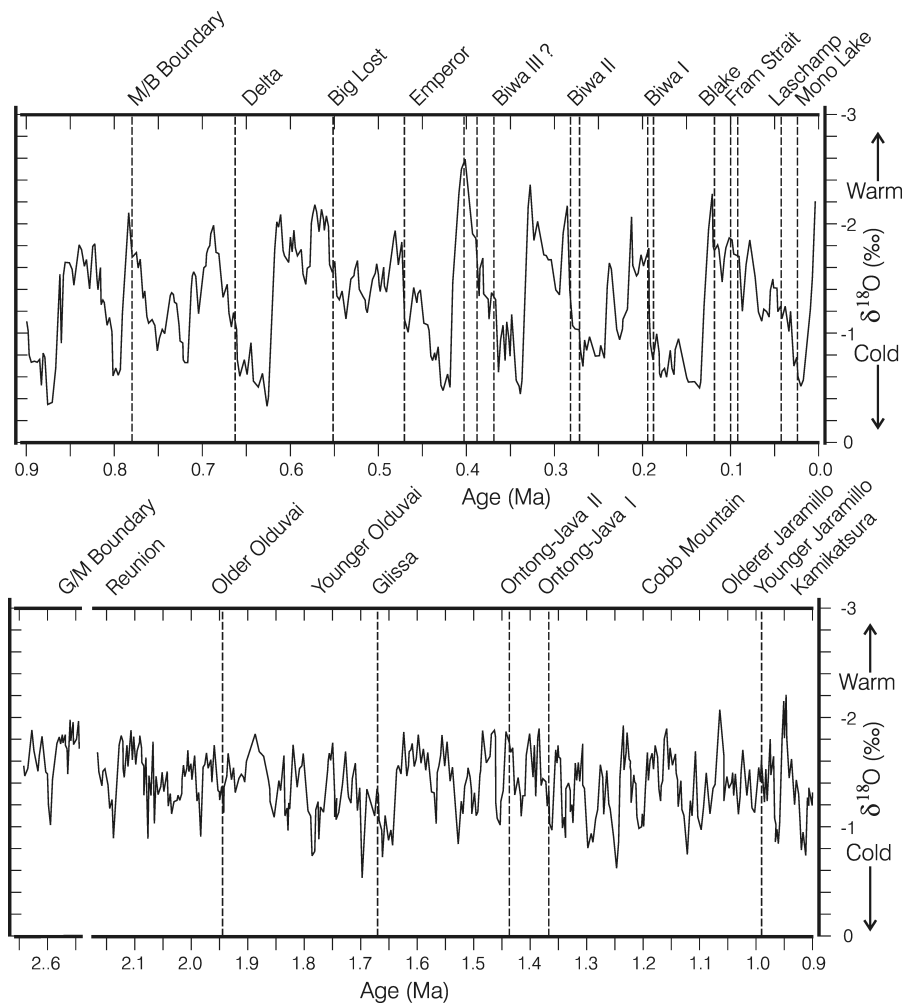


Figure 51. Marine oxygen isotope record of the 0–0.9 Ma (top) and 0.9–2.6 Ma (bottom) intervals, with geomagnetic events and polarity reversal listed at the top. Adapted from Worm (1997).

2805 latter being the dominant modulation on multimillennial time scales (see  
 2806 part VI). For the last 200 000 years the geomagnetic intensity indeed  
 2807 shows minima at the 100 000-year frequency that coincide with the  $^{10}\text{Be}$   
 2808 production maxima (Fig. 53). Overall, the two trends mimic each other,  
 2809 as well as the stacked  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  climate trend. While the  $^{10}\text{Be}$  record for  
 2810 earlier Quaternary times is not available, the stacked geomagnetic field  
 2811 paleointensity curve does extend to  $\approx 800\,000$  years (Guyodo and Valet,  
 2812 1999) and shows some resemblance to the contemporary  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  pattern,  
 2813 including intensity dips at quasi-100 000-year periodicity. The degree  
 2814 of this apparent correlation is presently a matter of dispute, with some

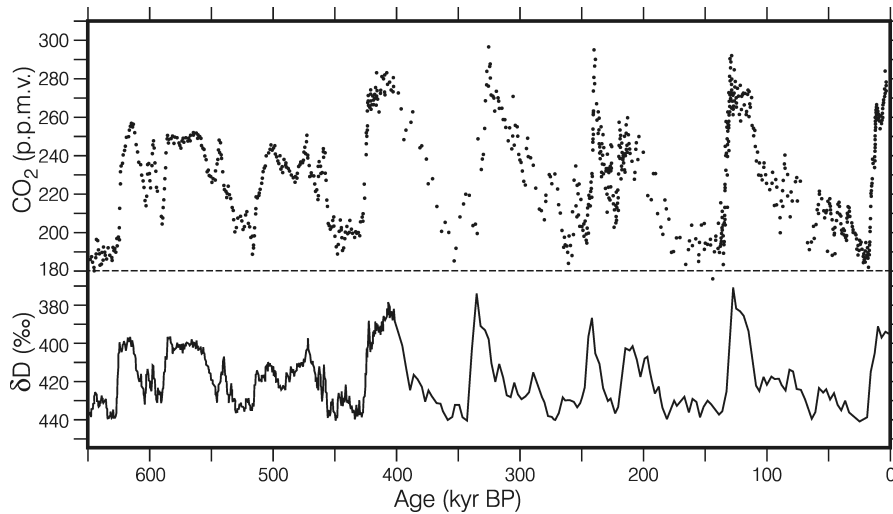


Figure 52. Antarctic ice core data for the last 650 000 years (650 kyr). Isotopic composition of hydrogen isotopes in ice ( $\delta D$ ) is a proxy for temperature, with temperature increasing with declining  $\delta D$ .  $CO_2$  concentrations were measured in frozen air bubbles. Adapted from Siegenthaler et al. (2005).

2815 authors claiming high significance (Worm, 1997; Channell et al., 1998),  
 2816 others disputing it (Guyodo and Valet, 1999), and still others (Frank,  
 2817 2000), despite stated preferences, reserving their definitive judgment.

2818 A direct comparison of various proxies and of their lags/leads on  
 2819 shorter,  $10^4$ – $10^3$ -year, time scales is at present difficult because it is  
 2820 hampered by limitations of geochronology, correlation uncertainties,  
 2821 and by dampened amplitudes of the stacked records. The presumably  
 2822 best resolved signals are those of the last 50 000 years, and here the  $\delta^{18}O$   
 2823 minimum appears to have lagged by  $\approx 15\,000 \pm 10\,000$  years behind the  
 2824 minimum of geomagnetic paleointensity (Frank, 2000), a lag that ap-  
 2825 proaches the uncertainty limits of the orbitally based chronology. While  
 2826 some of this mismatch may indeed be due to correlation problems, a  
 2827 more likely explanation is that the discrepancy is real, potentially due  
 2828 to superimposed variation in heliomagnetic shield intensity modulated  
 2829 by the Sun. Assuming this to be the case, one can subtract the portion  
 2830 of the  $^{10}Be$  signal that is due to geomagnetic paleointensity and view  
 2831 the superimposed higher order oscillations as an indirect measure of  
 2832 solar irradiance (Masarik and Beer, 1999). Utilising this conceptual  
 2833 framework, Sharma (2002) reproduced a 200 000 year solar irradiance  
 2834 trend that fits surprisingly well with the normalized  $\delta^{18}O$  record for  
 2835 coeval oceans (Fig. 54). This, the advocated correlations of  $^{10}Be$  with  
 2836  $\delta^{18}O$  (cold phases of the Dansgaard-Oeschger events) in the Greenland  
 2837 GISP2 ice core for the 40 000 – 11 000 years BP interval (van Geel et al.,



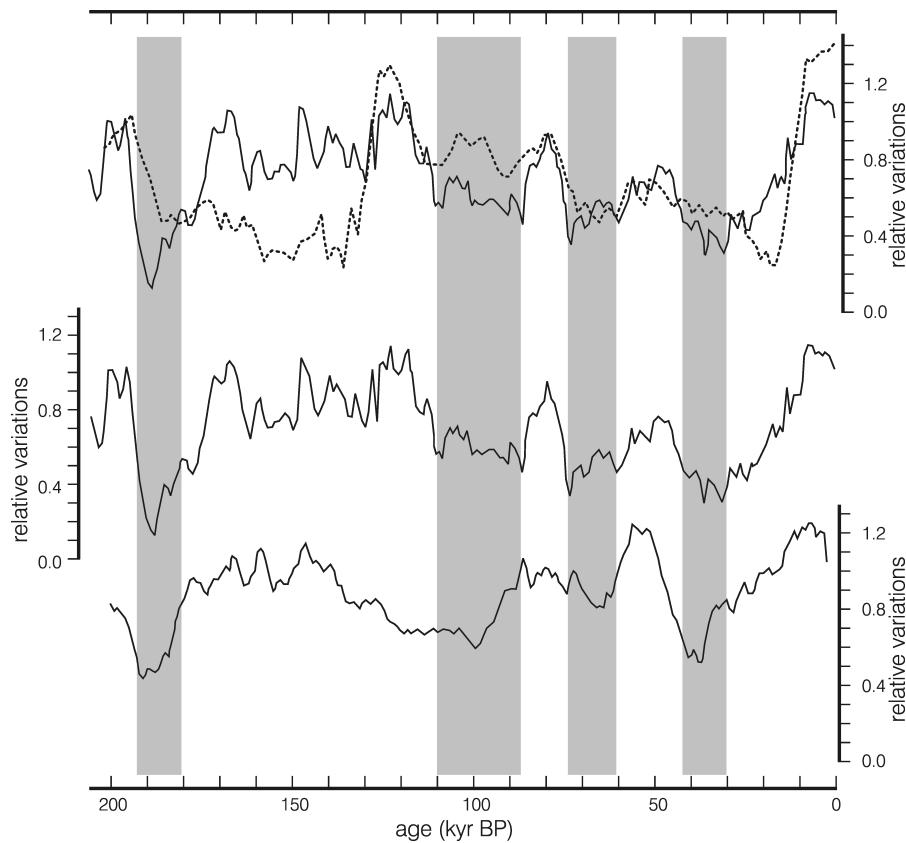


Figure 53. Relative variations of the geomagnetic field paleointensity for the last 200 000 years as derived (bottom) from global stacked paleomagnetic record (Guyodo and Valet, 1999) and (middle) from reconstruction based on  $^{10}\text{Be}$  production rate. Top figure is a comparison of the  $^{10}\text{Be}$  trend (full line) with the global  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  stacked record (dotted line) (Martinson et al., 1987). Shaded – intervals of low paleomagnetic intensities. Adapted from Frank (2000).

2838 1999b), along with the monsoonal patterns in the Arabian Sea area  
 2839 for the last 65 000 years (Higginson et al., 2004), all argue for solar  
 2840 forcing of climate via GCR-flux modulation on time scales of  $\leq 10^4$   
 2841 years. However, the issue is complicated by the fact that a terrestrial  
 2842 record based on a single cosmogenic isotope is equivocal. For example,  
 2843 the  $^{10}\text{Be}$  record can reflect either a variable GCR-flux (production)  
 2844 or a changing depositional rate of the hosting phase (redistribution)  
 2845 (Christl et al., 2003), both potentially related to climate, but with  
 2846 opposite cause/effect interpretations. Fortunately, at least for the last  
 2847  $\approx 45\,000$  years, the opposing propositions can be tested because for  
 2848 this time span we also have a record of an additional cosmogenic  
 2849 tracer,  $^{14}\text{C}$ . While the uncertainties in the  $\Delta^{14}\text{C}$  signal for the inter-

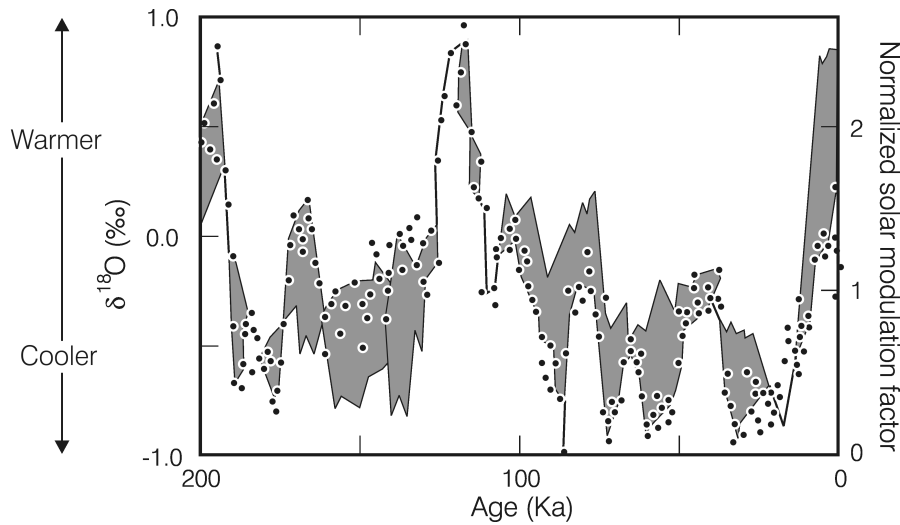


Figure 54. Calculated intensity of solar irradiance (dots) during the past 200 000 years juxtaposed with the normalized  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  record of the oceans (shading). Note that the magnitude of uncertainties in the derived curve are a matter of debate, but this would not necessarily impact the causation which could be only from Sun to Earth. Adapted from Sharma (2002).

2850 vals older than  $\approx 25\,000$  years are still relatively large, the subsequent  
 2851 record, particularly during the Holocene, is well constrained (Bard,  
 2852 1998; Frank, 2000) and will be discussed in the next section. Having  
 2853 these parallel records of  $^{10}\text{Be}$  and  $^{14}\text{C}$  enables us to resolve the pro-  
 2854 duction/redistribution dichotomy because cosmogenic nuclides, despite  
 2855 their common production (GCR-flux), have entirely different terrestrial  
 2856 dispersal pathways (see section 13).  $^{10}\text{Be}$  “rains” directly onto the sur-  
 2857 face of the planet where it is deposited in the ice or sediments, while  
 2858  $^{14}\text{C}$  becomes first part of the atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  pool and is only later  
 2859 ( $\approx 20$  years) sequestered by photosynthetic activity into plants. Hence,  
 2860 any covariant trend of  $^{10}\text{Be}$  and  $^{14}\text{C}$  can only be due to the production  
 2861 term. Moreover, the issues of lags and leads become less critical than for  
 2862 the purely terrestrial parameters (e.g.  $\text{CO}_2/\delta^{18}\text{O}$  correlations), because  
 2863 any potential causation can only be from space to Earth, and not the  
 2864 other way around.

#### 2865 15.6. POSTGLACIAL CLIMATE ON MILLENIAL TO CENTENNIAL 2866 TIME SCALES

2867 The retreat of large ice sheets in the northern hemisphere commenced  
 2868  $\approx 15\,000$  years ago, reached a maximum  $\approx 10\,000$  years ago, and ended  
 2869  $\approx 6\,000$  years ago (Ruddiman, 2001). This retreat also marks the termi-

2870 nation of the last 100 000-year cooling oscillation (Termination I) that,  
2871 as argued above, may have been potentially a response to geomagnetic  
2872 modulation of the cosmic ray flux.

2873 Bond et al. (2001) showed convincingly that “over the last 12 000  
2874 years virtually every centennial time scale increase in drift ice in (their)  
2875 North Atlantic record was tied to a distinct interval of variable and,  
2876 overall, reduced solar output”, as read from  $^{10}\text{Be}$  and  $^{14}\text{C}$  proxies  
2877 (Fig. 55). Most of these 200–500 year climatic oscillations may be  
2878 a response to heliospheric modulation of GCR-flux by the HMF. In a  
2879 somewhat nuanced view, (Gallet et al., 2005; see also St-Onge et al.,  
2880 2003) argued, nevertheless, that at least some of the cooling intervals  
2881 in the last 3 000 years do reflect short-term spikes in geomagnetic field  
2882 intensity, as measured on French faience potsherds.

2883 The coherency of the Bond et al. (2001) marine signal with comple-  
2884 mentary records from marine sediments (Christl et al., 2003; St-Onge  
2885 et al., 2003; Poore et al., 2004; Jiang et al., 2005), lacustrine settings  
2886 (Björck et al., 1991; Magny, 1993; Verschuren et al., 2000; Snowball and  
2887 Sandgren, 2002; Hu et al., 2003; Lim et al., 2005), speleothems (Neff  
2888 et al., 2001; Niggemann et al., 2003; Mangini et al., 2005; Fleitmann  
2889 et al., 2003; Wang et al., 2005), polar ice sheets (Stuiver et al., 1997; Laj  
2890 et al., 2000), Alaskan glaciers (Wiles et al., 2004), bogs (Chambers  
2891 et al., 1999; Blaauw et al., 2004; Xu et al., 2006), intensity of monsoonal  
2892 or wet/dry cycles (Hodell et al., 2001; Wang et al., 2001; Cruz et al.,  
2893 2005; Gupta et al., 2005) and pollen records (Viau et al., 2002; Willard  
2894 et al., 2005), suggests that we are indeed dealing with a global record of  
2895 climate. The ultimate driver was likely the variable solar activity, the  
2896 more so that the  $\text{CO}_2$  levels (Fig. 55) during this entire time span were  
2897 relatively flat (Fig. 55), at the “pre-industrial” levels of  $\approx 270 \pm 10$  ppm  
2898 (Indermühle et al., 1999).

2899 The Medieval Climate Optimum (MCO) at  $\approx 800$ –1300 AD and the  
2900 Little Ice Age (LIA) at  $\approx 1400$ –1850 AD are a portion of this oscillating  
2901 climate pattern that deserves more thorough consideration because of  
2902 the much debated “hockey stick” temperature reconstruction of Mann  
2903 et al. (1999). In contrast to the claim of these authors for their local  
2904 significance, the MCO and LIA were features that were recorded across  
2905 the globe (Soon and Baliunas, 2003). Moreover, the amplitude of these  
2906 climate swings must have exceeded the global temperature gradients  
2907 of the last century because of the existence of farms in Greenland and  
2908 vineyards in England during the MCO, juxtaposed to frozen Baltic  
2909 Sea and canals in Europe during the LIA. Neither climate mode was a  
2910 commonality during the last century and the composite proxy record  
2911 of Mann et al. (1999) must therefore underestimate the magnitude of  
2912 short term climate oscillations (von Storch et al., 2004; Esper et al.,

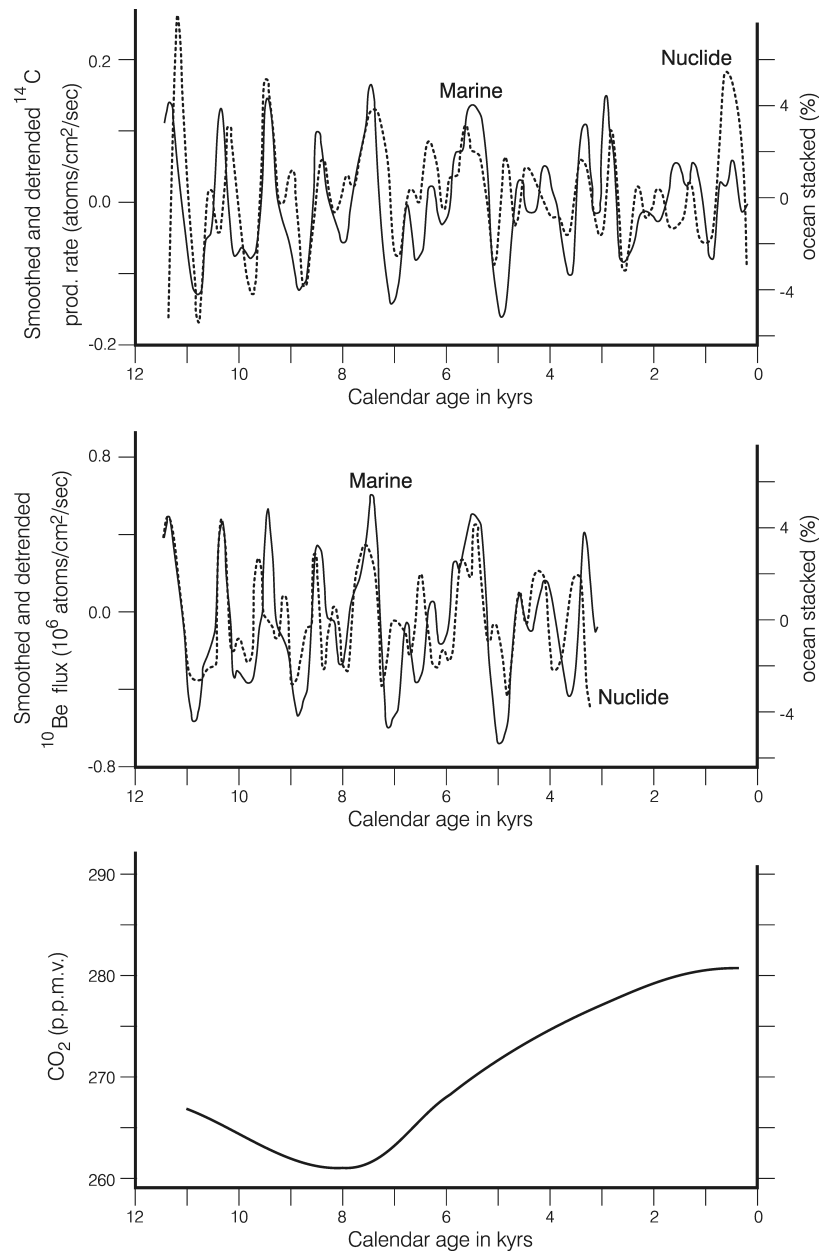


Figure 55. Comparison of the detrended and smoothed production rates for  $^{14}\text{C}$  (top) and  $^{10}\text{Be}$  (middle) with changes in proxies of drift ice (“marine”) in North Atlantic deep-sea sediments (Bond et al., 2001). The “pre-industrial” ice core  $\text{CO}_2$  concentrations from Indermühle et al. (1999).

2913 2005; Moberg et al., 2005). In contrast to the “hockey stick” reconstruc-  
 2914 tion, the stalagmite record from a cave in the Alps (Mangini et al.,

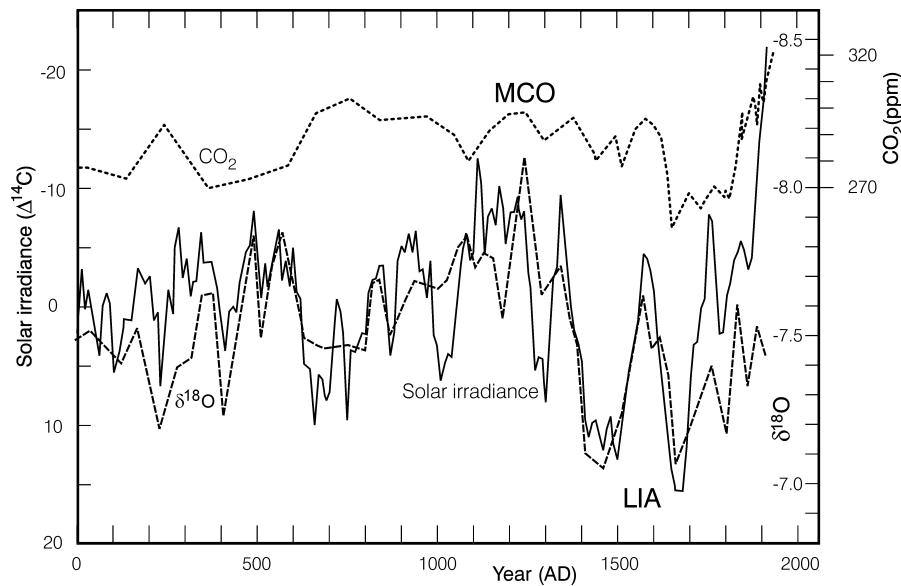


Figure 56. The  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  record of a stalagmite from the Spannagel cave in the central Alps (dashed line) covering the last 2000 years, compared to  $^{14}\text{C}$  production rate ( $\Delta^{14}\text{C}$ ) (full line with reversed scale) that is a proxy for solar irradiance (Mangini et al., 2005).  $\text{CO}_2$  concentration from ice cores and instrumental measurements from Indermühle et al. (1999) and IPCC (2001). MCO is the warm Medieval Climate Optimum and LIA stands for Little Ice Age.

2915 2005), covering the time span from 2000 years BP to the early 20th  
 2916 century, clearly shows both the MCO and LIA (Fig. 56). Note also the  
 2917 exceptionally good inverse correlation with the  $^{14}\text{C}$  record, the latter  
 2918 a function of the intensity of solar radiation. A comparison to solar  
 2919 irradiance based on  $^{10}\text{Be}$  would yield a similar outcome. In fact, the  
 2920  $^{10}\text{Be}$  and  $^{14}\text{C}$  records are coherent for the last 9 000 years (Solanki et al.,  
 2921 2004). Note again, that all these marked climate shifts happened when  
 2922 the atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  levels were marooned at their “pre-industrial”  
 2923 value of  $\approx 280$  ppm (Fig. 56).

#### 2924 15.7. POST LITTLE ICE AGE CLIMATE ON DECADEAL TIME SCALES

2925 The end of the LIA, in the last decades of the 19th century, coincided  
 2926 with the advent of the industrial revolution and it is this time interval  
 2927 that is the centerpiece of intense scientific and political debates. The  
 2928 instrumental centennial global temperature record (IPCC, 2001) shows  
 2929 an overall warming of  $\approx 0.6^\circ\text{C}$ , in two spurts, at  $\approx 1880$ –1940 and  
 2930 1976–2000, with almost three decades of temperature decline in the  
 2931 intervening interval. In contrast, atmospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  increased exponen-  
 2932 tially to today (Fig. 57). A general consensus accepts that the pre-

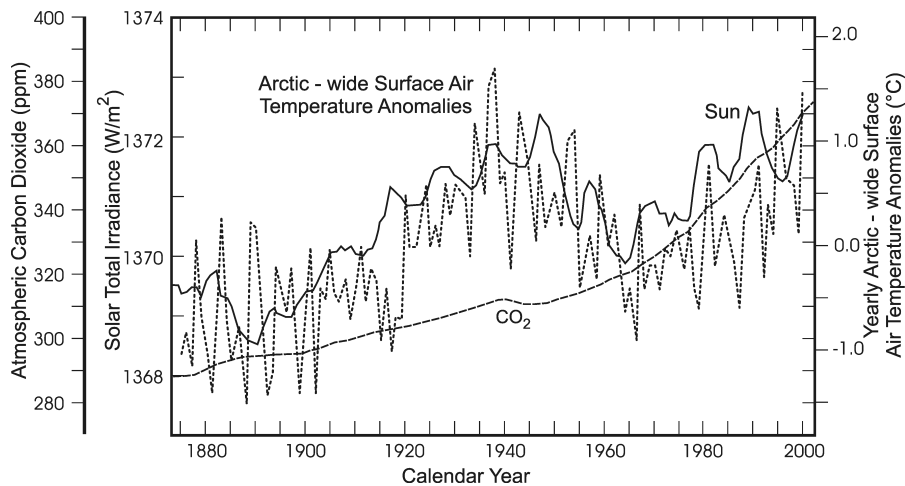


Figure 57. Decadally smoothed annual mean Arctic-wide air temperature anomaly time series (dotted) compared to the estimated TSI (Sun, full line) and to atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> levels from 1875 to 2000 (dashed line). Adapted from Soon (2005).

2933 1940's temperature rise, because of only a slight increase in atmospheric  
 2934 CO<sub>2</sub> levels, could not have been caused by GHGs, and this warming is  
 2935 thus attributed mostly to increased solar activity (Mitchell et al., 2001).  
 2936 The subsequent evolution, however, is a bone of contention. Solanki  
 2937 et al. (2004), reconstructing solar evolution from observational and  
 2938 proxy data, showed that the Sun's intensity over the second half of the  
 2939 20th century was higher than at any time over the last 8000 years (but  
 2940 see Muscheler et al., 2005b vs. Solanki et al., 2005. Their solar trend  
 2941 and the IPCC temperature trend are almost identical, except for the  
 2942 last 2 to 3 decades, when the temperature rise exceeded that of the solar  
 2943 index. Solanki and coauthors attributed this to the emergence of the  
 2944 anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> signal from the background of natural variability,  
 2945 while the "consensus" IPCC interpretation attributes even the entire  
 2946 post-1940's temperature trend mostly to anthropogenic causes, with  
 2947 cooling to 1976 due to emissions of sulphur aerosols and the subsequent  
 2948 warming to GHGs (Mitchell et al., 2001).

2949 The largest impact of climate modulation by GHG should be evident  
 2950 in polar regions. Yet, the decadally smoothed Arctic observational data  
 2951 (Soon, 2005) show almost a perfect correlation with TSI, even for the  
 2952 last decades (Fig. 57). Note, also, that the GCMs' do not take into  
 2953 account the possible amplification of TSI, likely via GCR-flux and cloud  
 2954 albedo, and this may lead to an underestimate of their climate sensi-  
 2955 tivity to solar forcing (Scafetta and West, 2005) and to simultaneous  
 2956 overestimate of the GHG impact. While the models assume that the  
 2957 relative GHG/solar impact on centennial climate evolution was  $\approx 2:1$

2958 (Mitchell et al., 2001), statistical evaluation of empirical centennial  
2959 trends shows that the decadal smoothed solar modulator (Fig. 57)  
2960 can explain  $\geq 48-80\%$  of the regional and global temperature variances  
2961 (Foukal, 2002; Soon, 2005; Kilcik, 2005). Observational data therefore  
2962 argue of a reversal of significance, making the case for existence of a  
2963 TSI amplifier. Is there any empirical support for this proposition? If  
2964 amplification by GCR-flux exists, whatever the actual pathway, it has  
2965 to be modulated by the magnetosphere. The convincing correlations  
2966 (Le Mouél et al., 2005; Veretenenko et al., 2005) of decadal smoothed  
2967 TSI, temperature, “magnetic indices” (Fig. 58), cyclonic activity and  
2968  $^{10}\text{Be}$  clearly support the existence of such an amplifier. In view of these  
2969 data, the potential discrepancy of the last 2–3 decades may require  
2970 re-examination. It may be that we are only dealing with a problem of  
2971 a long-term persistence (Cohn and Lins, 2005) or with an “edge effect”  
2972 of a time series and final judgment should therefore be deferred until a  
2973 longer time series is acquired. This cautionary note is supported further  
2974 by complementary observational data. In contrast to GCM models that  
2975 hold the Earth’s albedo roughly constant ( $\approx 0.3$ ), the observational data  
2976 by several approaches and groups (Pallé et al., 2005; Wild et al., 2005)  
2977 show a significant decadal variability in albedo, mostly, although not  
2978 exclusively, attributed to cloudiness. For the 1985–2000 (or 2002) inter-  
2979 val alone, the impact of such forcings on the planetary energy balance  
2980 is claimed to have been  $+2$  to  $6 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ , coincident with a decline  
2981 of the Bond albedo of  $\approx 7\%$  (Kandel and Viollier, 2005), while for the  
2982 combined GHG + aerosol it was only  $+0.6 \text{ W m}^{-2}$ . For the 2000–2004  
2983 period, the somewhat inconclusive data indicate a comparable relative  
2984 importance. For comparison, the cumulative radiative forcing of all an-  
2985 thropogenic GHGs combined that is estimated at  $\approx 2.5 \text{ W m}^{-2}$  (IPCC,  
2986 2001). These observations suggest that celestial phenomena may have  
2987 been the dominant forcing factor even during the most recent past.

2988 Further observational support for the claim that solar activity plays  
2989 a decisive role on climate on (sub)decadal time scales comes from  
2990 a multitude of direct empirical observations. Alexander (2005) docu-  
2991 mented 21-year solar cycle periodicity in South African annual rainfall,  
2992 river flow, floods, lake and groundwater levels, and in the Southern  
2993 Oscillation index. The intensity and variability of Schwabe, Hale and  
2994 Gleissberg solar cycles was shown to correlate with the monsoonal dy-  
2995 namics (Higginson et al., 2004; van Loon et al., 2004; Bhattacharyya  
2996 and Narasimha, 2005), Pacific SSTs (Weng, 2005), Siberian climate  
2997 (Raspopov et al., 2004), Northern Atlantic cyclogenesis, geomagnetic  
2998 activity and galactic GCR-flux (Veretenenko et al., 2005), atmospheric  
2999 Southern Annual Mode (Kuroda and Kodera, 2005), Southern Oscilla-  
3000 tion Index (Higginson et al., 2004), North Atlantic Oscillation (Pozo-

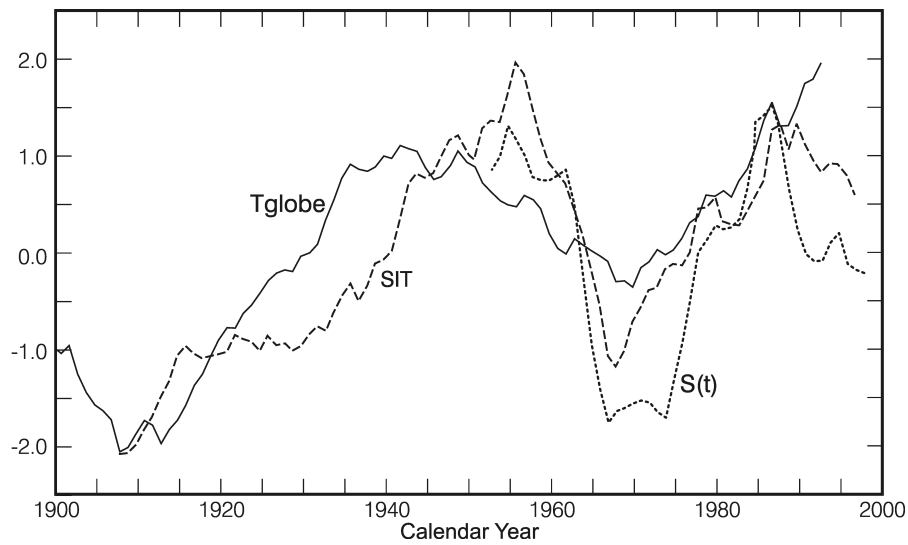


Figure 58. Normalised time evolution of the 11-year running mean for magnetic indices (SIT) at Sitka, normalized solar irradiance ( $S(t)$ ) and global temperature ( $T_{\text{globe}}$ ) during the last century. Adapted from Le Mouél et al. (2005).

3001 Vázquez et al., 2004), tropospheric temperatures, water vapour distri-  
 3002 bution and global circulation regime (Gleisner et al., 2005) and latitu-  
 3003 dinal and temporal cloud distribution (Usoskin et al., 2004c), the latter  
 3004 postulated as due to cosmic ray induced ionization. Variations in the  
 3005 interplanetary magnetic/electric field are also linked to tropospheric  
 3006 temperature patterns at Vostok (Troshichev et al., 2003). For many  
 3007 additional examples see the publication lists of the articles quoted in  
 3008 this review.



3009

## Part VIII

3010

# Resume



3011

## 16. Where do we stand?

3012 In this review the evolution of the cosmic ray flux from its origin into  
3013 the Earth atmosphere is presented. The consequences of variable cosmic  
3014 ray fluxes for the Earth environment, i.e. the production of cosmogenic  
3015 isotopes and the interpretation of the related archives as well as the in-  
3016 fluence on climate is discussed. Although many of the physical processes  
3017 seem to be understood and others are actively researched, many open  
3018 questions remain. As the explicit formulation of such questions depends  
3019 on the research field, it seems better to identify the most obvious tasks  
3020 for future research:

3021 Galaxy: It is evident, that in different regions of the solar orbit around  
3022 the galactic center the cosmic ray flux is different. The physical  
3023 processes of the acceleration of a single cosmic ray particle and  
3024 at its source, at least below 1 TeV, seem to be understood. To  
3025 determine the spectra and total flux of the cosmic rays, it is nec-  
3026 essary to know the number and strength of the sources and their  
3027 distribution in space and time. In view of the apparent lack of  
3028 in-situ data (e.g. the local interstellar spectra), more sophisticated  
3029 modeling is required until an Interstellar Probe will provide us  
3030 with direct observations of the local interstellar medium.

3031 Heliosphere: The acceleration and propagation of cosmic rays at the  
3032 termination shock and beyond is presently studied in much detail.  
3033 The modulation of cosmic rays including charge, space and time  
3034 dependence is observed with numerous spacecraft as well as Earth  
3035 bound observatories. Nevertheless, the acceleration of cosmic rays  
3036 at dynamic shock waves, like the termination shock needs further  
3037 research. A crucial question is how varies the heliospheric mod-  
3038 ulation volume with time? It is evident that the Sun encounters  
3039 different interstellar environments during its passage through the  
3040 galaxy, and hence the outer heliospheric structure will change.  
3041 For example, relatively small changes in the interstellar number  
3042 density will cause the termination shock to migrate inward into the  
3043 planetary system. The possible consequences of such a migration  
3044 have been studied only poorly and need further development.

3045 Archives: The cosmogenic isotopes are produced in the atmosphere and  
3046 are then stored in sediments, ice-cores, or meteorites. In many  
3047 studies the cosmic ray flux at the top of the atmosphere is derived  
3048 using the force-field approximation, which neglects charge sign de-  
3049 pendence. The latter, however, is well recorded with Earth bound  
3050 observatories, like neutron monitors. Therefore, it is evident that

3051 these effects should be taken into account interpreting cosmogenic  
3052 data.

3053 Climate: Empirical evidence for an influence of “space weather and  
3054 climate” on planetary environments, especially on the terrestrial  
3055 climate, exists for time scales, reaching from decades up to bil-  
3056 lion years. As shown in this review it makes sense to distinguish  
3057 between solar-terrestrial and interstellar-terrestrial relations, i.e.  
3058 to distinguish between an internal solar and external interstellar  
3059 trigger for influence on Earth and its environment. In contrast to  
3060 the solar forcing the cosmic ray forcing operates, in principle, on all  
3061 time scales. For both forcings the processes relevant for an influence  
3062 on climate are unclear. Nonetheless, the evidence for the cosmic  
3063 ray forcing is increasing as is the understanding of its physical  
3064 principles. Cosmic rays which, despite their negligible energy com-  
3065 pared to that of solar irradiance, are the main source of ionization  
3066 in the troposphere. The detailed chain of processes connecting the  
3067 variable cosmic ray flux with the terrestrial climate (i.e. via cloud  
3068 formation) has still to be identified.

3069 Anomalous cosmic rays: Due to potential massive changes in the struc-  
3070 ture of the heliosphere along its path around the galactic center,  
3071 it is likely that not only galactic but also the anomalous cosmic  
3072 rays are a mediator of the interstellar-terrestrial relations. The  
3073 investigation of this problem has only recently started.

3074 The complexity of the topic “interstellar-terrestrial relations” ev-  
3075 idently requires an interdisciplinary cooperation. This alone already  
3076 has a great potential to lead the scientists to new frontiers.

3077

## Acknowledgements

3078 We thank the International Space Science Institute (ISSI) for their  
3079 financial support and hospitality.

3080 H.-J.F. and K.S. are grateful for financial support granted to them  
3081 by the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft (DFG) in the frame of the  
3082 project “Heliotrigger” (Fa 97/28-1) as well as H.F., B.H. and again  
3083 K.S. in the project “HelioCAWSES” (FI■■■■, B■■■■)

3084 U.W.L. wishes to thank the Claude Leon Foundation for financial  
3085 support for his post-doctoral research and the DFG within the project  
3086 “■■■■” (SCHL 201/14-3).

3087 M.S.P., S.E.S.F. and U.W.L. acknowledge the partial support of  
3088 the South African National Research Foundation under grant number  
3089 2053475.

3090 J.V. was supported financially by the Natural Sciences and Engi-  
3091 neering Research Council of Canada and the Canadian Institute for  
3092 Advanced Research. P. Wickham and E. Hearn provided technical sup-  
3093 port.

3094 L.D. and E.F. were supported by the Swiss National Science Foun-  
3095 dation, grant 200020-105435/1, and by the Swiss State Secretariat for  
3096 Education and Research, SER, grant COST-724/C05.0034.

3097

## References

- 3098 Alexander, W.: 2005, ‘Linkages Between Solar Activity and Climatic Responses’.  
3099 *Energy & Environment* **16**, 239–254.
- 3100 Alexeev, I. I. and Y. I. Feldstein: 2001, ‘Modeling of geomagnetic field during mag-  
3101 netic storms and comparison with observations’. *Journal of Atmospheric and*  
3102 *Terrestrial Physics* **63**, 431–440.
- 3103 Amaral, L. H. and J. R. D. Lepine: 1997, ‘A self-consistent model of the spiral  
3104 structure of the Galaxy’. *Mon. Not. Roy. Astron. Soc.* **286**, 885–894.
- 3105 Axford, W. I.: 1981, ‘Late paper: Acceleration of cosmic rays by shock waves’. In:  
3106 *Workshop on Plasma Astrophysics*. pp. 425–+.
- 3107 Aylmer, D., V. Bonanno, G. F. Herzog, H. Weber, J. Klein, and R. Middleton:  
3108 1988,  $^{26}\text{Al}$  and  $^{10}\text{Be}$  production in iron meteorites’. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **88**,  
3109 107–118.
- 3110 Baede, A., E. Ahlonsou, Y. Ding, and D. Schimel: 2001, ‘The Climate System: an  
3111 Overview’. In: J. Houghton, Y. Ding, D. Griggs, M. Noguer, P. van der Linden,  
3112 X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C. Johnson (eds.): *Climate Change 2001: The Scientific*  
3113 *Basis: Contribution of Working Group I to the Third Assessment Report of*  
3114 *the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (Ch. 1)*. pp. 85–98, Cambridge  
3115 University Press, Cambridge, U.K.
- 3116 Baranov, V. B. and Y. G. Malama: 1993, ‘Model of the solar wind interaction with  
3117 the local interstellar medium - Numerical solution of self-consistent problem’. *J.*  
3118 *Geophys. Res.* **98**, 15157–+.

- 3119 Bard, E.: 1998, 'Geochemical and geophysical implications of the radiocarbon  
3120 calibration'. *GCA* **62**, 2025–2038.
- 3121 Bard, E., G. M. Raisbeck, F. Yiou, and J. Jouzel: 1997, 'Solar modulation of cos-  
3122 mogenic nuclide production over the last millennium: comparison between  $^{14}\text{C}$   
3123 and  $^{10}\text{Be}$  records'. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters* **150**, 453–462.
- 3124 Barraclough, D.: 1974, 'Spherical harmonic analyses of the geomagnetic field for  
3125 eight epochs between 1600 and 1910'. *Geophys. J. R. Astron. Soc.* **36**, 497–513.
- 3126 Barry, D. C.: 1988, 'The chromospheric age dependence of the birthrate, composi-  
3127 tion, motions, and rotation of late F and G dwarfs within 25 parsecs of the sun'.  
3128 *Astrophys. J.* **334**, 436–448.
- 3129 Bazilevskaya, G. A., M. Krainev, Y. I. Stozhkov, A. Svirzhetskaya, and N.  
3130 Svirhevsky: 1991, 'Long-term Soviet Program for the Measurements of Ionizing  
3131 Radiation in the Stratosphere'. *J. Geomag. Geoelectr. Japan* **43**, 893–.
- 3132 Beer, J., A. Blinov, G. Bonani, H. J. Hofmann, and R. C. Finkel: 1990, 'Use of Be-10  
3133 in polar ice to trace the 11-year cycle of solar activity'. *Nature* **347**, 164–166.
- 3134 Beer, J., G. M. Raisbeck, and F. Yiou: 1991, 'Time variations of Be-10 and solar  
3135 activity'. In: C. Sonett, M. Giampapa, and M. Mathews (eds.): *The Sun in Time*.  
3136 pp. 343–359, Univ. Ariz. Press.
- 3137 Begelman, M. C. and M. J. Rees: 1976, 'Can cosmic clouds cause climatic  
3138 catastrophes'. *Nature* **261**, 298–+.
- 3139 Berezinskiĭ, V. S., S. V. Bulanov, V. A. Dogiel, and V. S. Ptuskin: 1990, *Astrophysics  
3140 of cosmic rays*. Amsterdam: North-Holland, 1990, edited by Ginzburg, V.L.
- 3141 Berger, A.: 1991, *Long-term history of climate ice ages and Milankovitch periodicity*,  
3142 pp. 498–510. The Sun in Time.
- 3143 Berger, A., J. L. Mélice, and M. F. Loutre: 2005, 'On the origin of the 100-kyr cycles  
3144 in the astronomical forcing'. *Paleoceanography* **20**(4), PA4019.
- 3145 Berner, R. and Z. Kothval: 2001, 'GEOCARBIII: A revised model of atmospheric  
3146  $\text{CO}_2$  over Phanerozoic time'. *Am. J. Sci.* **301**, 182–204.
- 3147 Bhattacharyya, S. and R. Narasimha: 2005, 'Possible association between Indian  
3148 monsoon rainfall and solar activity'. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **32**, 5813–+.
- 3149 Bieber, J. W., W. H. Matthaeus, A. Shalchi, and G. Qin: 2004, 'Nonlinear guiding  
3150 center theory of perpendicular diffusion: General properties and comparison with  
3151 observation'. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **31**, L10805:p1–4.
- 3152 Binney, J. and S. Tremaine: 1987, *Galactic dynamics*. Princeton, NJ, Princeton  
3153 University Press, 747 p.
- 3154 Björck, S., M. Malmer, C. Hjort, P. Sandgren, O. Ingólfsson, B. Wallén, R. Smith,  
3155 and B. Jónsson: 1991, 'Stratigraphic and paleoclimatic studies of a 5,500 years  
3156 old moss bank on Elephant Island'. *Antarctica Arctic Alpine Res.* **23**, 361–374.
- 3157 Blaauw, M., B. van Geel, and J. van der Plicht: 2004, 'Solar forcing of climatic change  
3158 during the mid-Holocene: indications from raised bogs in The Netherlands.'. *The  
3159 Holocene* **14**(1), 35–44.
- 3160 Blinov, A.: 1988, 'The dependence of cosmogenic isotope production rate on solar  
3161 activity and geomagnetic field variations'. In: F. R. Stephenson and A. W.  
3162 Wolfendale (eds.): *Secular Solar and Geomagnetic Variations in the last 10,000  
3163 Years*. pp. 329–340, Kluwer, Dordrecht.
- 3164 Blitz, L., M. Fich, and S. Kulkarni: 1983, 'The new Milky Way'. *Science* **220**,  
3165 1233–1240.
- 3166 Bond, G., B. Kromer, J. Beer, R. Muscheler, M. N. Evans, W. Showers, S. Hoffmann,  
3167 R. Lotti-Bond, I. Hajdas, and G. Bonani: 2001, 'Persistent Solar Influence on  
3168 North Atlantic Climate During the Holocene'. *Science* **294**, 2130–2136.

- 3169 Borrmann, T.: 2005, ‘Ein hydrodynamisches 3D-Mehrkomponentenmodell der He-  
3170 liosphäre und ihrer Wechselwirkung mit kosmischer Strahlung’. Ph.D. thesis,  
3171 Ruhr-Universität Bochum, Germany.
- 3172 Borrmann, T. and H. Fichtner: 2005, ‘On the dynamics of the heliosphere on  
3173 intermediate and long time-scales’. In: *COSPAR, Plenary Meeting*. pp. 1186–+.
- 3174 Boucot, A. J. and J. Gray: 2001, ‘A critique of Phanerozoic climatic models involving  
3175 changes in the CO<sub>2</sub> content of the atmosphere’. *Earth Science Reviews* **56**, 1–4.
- 3176 Briesmeister, J. F. e.: 1993, ‘MCNP - A general Monte Carlo N-particle transport  
3177 code version 4A, LA-12625-M’. Technical report, LANL, Los Alamos.
- 3178 Brun, R., F. Bruyant, M. Maire, A. McPherson, and P. Zanarini: 1987, ‘GEANT3  
3179 User’s guid’. Technical report, CERN.
- 3180 Burger, R. A. and M. Hattingh: 1998, ‘Toward a Realistic Diffusion Tensor for  
3181 Galactic Cosmic Rays’. *Astrophys. J.* **505**, 244–251.
- 3182 Burger, R. A. and M. Hitge: 2004, ‘The Effect of a Fisk-Type Heliospheric Magnetic  
3183 Field on Cosmic-Ray Modulation’. *Astrophys. J. Lett.* **617**, L73–L76.
- 3184 Burlaga, L. F., F. B. McDonald, and N. F. Ness: 1993, ‘Cosmic ray modulation and  
3185 the distant heliospheric magnetic field - Voyager 1 and 2 observations from 1986  
3186 to 1989’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **98**(17), 1–11.
- 3187 Burlaga, L. F., N. F. Ness, M. H. Acuña, R. P. Lepping, J. E. P. Connerney, E. C.  
3188 Stone, and F. B. McDonald: 2005, ‘Crossing the Termination Shock into the  
3189 Heliosheath: Magnetic Fields’. *Science* **309**, 2027–2029.
- 3190 Büsching, I., A. Kopp, M. Pohl, R. Schlickeiser, C. Perrot, and I. Grenier: 2005,  
3191 ‘Cosmic-Ray Propagation Properties for an Origin in Supernova Remnants’.  
3192 *Astrophys. J.* **619**, 314–326.
- 3193 Bzowski, M., H. J. Fahr, and D. Rucinski: 1996, ‘Interplanetary Neutral Particle  
3194 Fluxes Influencing the Earth’s Atmosphere and the Terrestrial Environment’.  
3195 *Icarus* **124**, 209–219.
- 3196 Caballero-Lopez, R. A. and H. Moraal: 2004, ‘Limitations of the force field equation  
3197 to describe cosmic ray modulation’. *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space  
3198 Physics)* **109**, 1101–+.
- 3199 Caballero-Lopez, R. A., H. Moraal, K. G. McCracken, and F. B. McDonald: 2004,  
3200 ‘The heliospheric magnetic field from 850 to 2000 AD inferred from <sup>10</sup>Be records’.  
3201 *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space Physics)* **109**, A12102:p.1–15.
- 3202 Caillon, N., J. P. Severinghaus, J. Jouzel, J.-M. Barnola, J. Kang, and V. Y.  
3203 Lipenkov: 2003, ‘Timing of Atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> and Antarctic Temperature  
3204 Changes Across Termination III’. *Science* **299**, 1728–1731.
- 3205 Callis, L. B., M. Natarajan, D. S. Evans, and J. D. Lambeth: 1998, ‘Solar atmo-  
3206 spheric coupling by electrons (SOLACE) 1. Effects of the May 12, 1997 solar  
3207 event on the middle atmosphere’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **103**, 28405–28420.
- 3208 Cane, H. V., G. Wibberenz, I. G. Richardson, and T. T. von Roseninge: 1999,  
3209 ‘Cosmic ray modulation and the solar magnetic field’. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **26**,  
3210 565–568.
- 3211 Carslaw, K. S., R. G. Harrison, and J. Kirkby: 2002, ‘Cosmic Rays, Clouds, and  
3212 Climate’. *Science* **298**, 1732–1737.
- 3213 Castagnoli, G. C. and D. Lal: 1980, ‘Solar modulation effects in terrestrial production  
3214 of carbon 14’. *Radiocarbon* **22**, 133–158.
- 3215 Chalov, S. V. and H. J. Fahr: 1995, ‘Entropy generation at the multi-fluid solar wind  
3216 termination shock producing anomalous cosmic ray particles’. *Planet. Space Sci.*  
3217 **43**, 1035–1043.

- 3218 Chalov, S. V. and H. J. Fahr: 2000, 'Pick-up ion acceleration at the termination  
3219 shock and the post-shock pick-up ion energy distribution'. *Astron. & Astrophys.*  
3220 **360**, 381–390.
- 3221 Chambers, F., M. Ogle, and J. Blackford: 1999, 'Paleoenvironmental evidenc for  
3222 solar forcing of Holocene climate: Linkages to solar science'. *Progress Phys.*  
3223 *Geogr.* **23**, 181–201.
- 3224 Champion, K. S. W., A. E. Cole, and A. J. Kantor: 1985, 'Handbook of Geophysics  
3225 and the Space Environment'. In: A. S. Jursa (ed.): *Standard and reference*  
3226 *atmosphere, in Handbook of Geophysics and the Space Environment*. pp. 14–1  
3227 – 14–43, Air Force Geophys. Lab., U.S. Air Force.
- 3228 Channell, J. E. T., D. A. Hodell, J. McManus, and C. Lehman: 1998, 'Orbital  
3229 modulation of the Earth's magnetic field intensity'. *Nature* **394**, 464–469.
- 3230 Charvatova, I.: 1990, 'The relations between solar motion and solar variability'.  
3231 *Bulletin of the Astronomical Institutes of Czechoslovakia* **41**, 56–59.
- 3232 Christl, M., C. Strobl, and A. Mangini: 2003, 'Beryllium-10 in deep-sea sediments:  
3233 a tracer for the Earth's magnetic field intensity during the last 200,000 years.'. *Quatern. Sci. Rev.* **22**, 725–739.
- 3234 Clem, J. M., J. W. Bieber, P. Evenson, D. Hall, J. E. Humble, and M. Duldig: 1997,  
3235 'Contribution of obliquely incident particles to neutron monitor counting rate'.  
3236 *J. Geophys. Res.* **102**, 26919–26926.
- 3237 Clem, J. M., G. de Angelis, P. Goldhagen, and J. W. Wilson: 2003, 'Preliminary  
3238 validation of computational procedures for a new atmospheric ionizing radiation  
3239 (air) model'. *Advances in Space Research* **32**, 27–33.
- 3240 Cohn, T. A. and H. F. Lins: 2005, 'Nature's style: Naturally trendy'. *Geophys. Res.*  
3241 *Lett.* **32**(23), L23402.
- 3242 Cooke, D. J., J. E. Humble, M. A. Shea, D. F. Smart, and N. Lund: 1991, 'On  
3243 cosmic-ray cut-off terminology'. *Nuovo Cimento C Geophysics Space Physics C*  
3244 **14**, 213–234.
- 3245 Crutzen, P. J., I. S. A. Isaksen, and G. C. Reid: 1975, 'Solar Proton Events:  
3246 Stratospheric Sources of Nitric Oxide'. *Science* **189**, 457–459.
- 3247 Cruz, F. W., J., S. J. Burns, I. Karmann, W. D. a. V. M. Sharp, A. D. Cardoso,  
3248 J. A. Ferrari, P. L. Silva Dias, and O. J. Viana: 2005, 'Insolation-driven changes  
3249 in atmospheric circulation over the past 116,000 years in subtropical Brazil'.  
3250 *Nature* **434**, 63–66.
- 3251 Cummings, A. C. and E. C. Stone: 2001, 'Onset of Solar Modulation in the Outer  
3252 Heliosphere as Seen in Anomalous Cosmic Rays'. *Proc. 27th Int. Cosmic Ray*  
3253 *Conf.* **27**, 4251–+.
- 3254 Dame, T. M., D. Hartmann, and P. Thaddeus: 2001, 'The Milky Way in Molecular  
3255 Clouds: A New Complete CO Survey'. *Astrophys. J.* **547**, 792–813.
- 3256 Damon, P. E. and C. P. Sonett: 1991, *Solar and terrestrial components of the*  
3257 *atmospheric C-14 variation spectrum*, pp. 360–388. The Sun in Time.
- 3258 de La Fuente Marcos, R. and C. de La Fuente Marcos: 2004, 'On the recent star  
3259 formation history of the Milky Way disk'. *New Astronomy* **9**, 475–502.
- 3260 de la Fuente Marcos, R. and C. de la Fuente Marcos: 2004, 'On the recent star  
3261 formation history of the Milky Way disk'. *New Astronomy* **9**, 475–502.
- 3262 Dennison, B. and V. N. Mansfield: 1976, 'Glaciations and dense interstellar clouds'.  
3263 *Nature* **261**, 32–34.
- 3264 Desilets, D., M. Zreda, and N. A. Lifton: 2001, 'Comment on 'Scaling factors for  
3265 production rates of in situ produced cosmogenic nuclides: a critical reevaluation'  
3266 by Tibor J. Dunai'. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **188**, 283–287.
- 3267



- 3268 Desorgher, L.: 2004, 'The MAGNETOCOSMICS code'. Technical report,  
3269 <http://cosray.unibe.ch/~laurent/magnetocosmics>.
- 3270 Desorgher, L., E. O. Flückiger, M. Gurtner, M. R. Moser, and R. Bütikofer: 2005,  
3271 'Atmocsmics: a Geant 4 Code for Computing the Interaction of Cosmic Rays  
3272 with the Earth's Atmosphere'. *International Journal of Modern Physics A* **20**,  
3273 6802–6804.
- 3274 Desorgher, L. E. O. F., M. R. Moser, and R. Bütikofer: 2003, 'Geant4 Simu-  
3275 lation of the Propagation of Cosmic Rays through the Earth's Atmosphere'.  
3276 In: *Proceedings of the 28th International Cosmic Ray Conference*, Vol. 7. pp.  
3277 4277–4280.
- 3278 Dorman, L. I., G. Villoresi, N. Iucci, M. Parisi, M. I. Tyasto, O. A. Danilova, and  
3279 N. G. Ptitsyna: 2000, 'Cosmic ray survey to Antarctica and coupling functions  
3280 for neutron component near solar minimum (1996-1997) 3. Geomagnetic effects  
3281 and coupling functions'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **105**, 21047–21056.
- 3282 Eddy, J. A.: 1976, 'The Maunder Minimum'. *Science* **192**, 1189–1202.
- 3283 Eichkorn, S., S. Wilhelm, H. Aufmhoff, K. H. Wohlfrom, and F. Arnold: 2002, 'Cos-  
3284 mic ray-induced aerosol-formation: First observational evidence from aircraft-  
3285 based ion mass spectrometer measurements in the upper troposphere'. *Geophys.*  
3286 *Res. Lett.* **29**, 43–1.
- 3287 Esper, J., R. Wilson, D. Frank, A. Moberg, H. Wanner, and J. Luterbachner: 2005,  
3288 'Climate: past ranges and future changes'. *Quatern. Sci. Rev.* **24**, 2164–2166.
- 3289 Fahr, H. J.: 1990, 'The Maxwellian alternative to the dark matter problem in  
3290 galaxies'. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **236**, 86–94.
- 3291 Fahr, H.-J.: 2004, 'Global structure of the heliosphere and interaction with the local  
3292 interstellar medium: three decades of growing knowledge'. *Advances in Space*  
3293 *Research* **34**, 3–13.
- 3294 Fahr, H. J., T. Kausch, and H. Scherer: 2000, 'A 5-fluid hydrodynamic approach to  
3295 model the solar system-interstellar medium interaction'. *Astron. & Astrophys.*  
3296 **357**, 268–282.
- 3297 Feldstein, Y. I., A. E. Levitin, J. U. Kozyra, B. T. Tsurutani, A. Prigancova, L.  
3298 Alperovich, W. D. Gonzalez, U. Mall, I. I. Alexeev, L. I. Gromova, and L. A.  
3299 Dremukhina: 2005, 'Self-consistent modeling of the large-scale distortions in  
3300 the geomagnetic field during the 24-27 September 1998 major magnetic storm'.  
3301 *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space Physics)* **110**(A9), 11214–+.
- 3302 Ferreira, S. E. S.: 2002, 'The Heliospheric Transport of Galactic Cosmic Rays and  
3303 Jovian Electrons'. Ph.D. thesis, Potchefstroomse Universiteit, South Africa.
- 3304 Ferreira, S. E. S. and M. S. Potgieter: 2004, 'Long-Term Cosmic-Ray Modulation in  
3305 the Heliosphere'. *Astrophys. J.* **603**, 744–752.
- 3306 Ferreira, S. E. S., M. S. Potgieter, R. A. Burger, B. Heber, and H. Fichtner: 2001,  
3307 'Modulation of Jovian and galactic electrons in the heliosphere: 1. Latitudinal  
3308 transport of a few MeV electrons'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **106**, 24979–24988.
- 3309 Ferreira, S. E. S. and K. Scherer: 2004, 'Modulation of Cosmic-Ray Electrons in the  
3310 Outer Heliosphere'. *Astrophys. J.* **616**, 1215–1223.
- 3311 Ferreira, S. E. S. and K. Scherer: 2005, 'Time evolution of galactic and anomalous  
3312 cosmic ray spectra in a dynamic heliosphere'. *Astrophys. J.* **submitted**, ???–???
- 3313 Fichtner, H.: 2001, 'Anomalous Cosmic Rays: Messengers from the Outer Helio-  
3314 sphere'. *Space Science Reviews* **95**, 639–754.
- 3315 Fichtner, H.: 2005, 'Cosmic rays in the heliosphere: progress in the modelling during  
3316 the past 10 years'. *Advances in Space Research* **35**, 512–517.

- 3317 Fichtner, H., M. Potgieter, S. Ferreira, and A. Burger: 2000, ‘On the propagation  
3318 of Jovian electrons in the heliosphere: transport modelling in 4-D phase space’.  
3319 *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **27**, 1611–+.
- 3320 Fichtner, H., K. Scherer, and B. Heber: 2006, ‘A criterion to discriminate between  
3321 solar and cosmic ray forcing of the terrestrial climate’. *J. Atmos. Terr. Phys.*  
3322 **submitted**, 00.
- 3323 Fichtner, H., S. R. Sreenivasan, and H. J. Fahr: 1996, ‘Cosmic ray modulation and  
3324 a non-spherical heliospheric shock.’. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **308**, 248–260.
- 3325 Fischer, H., M. Wahlen, J. Smith, D. Mastroianni, and B. Deck: 1999, ‘Ice Core  
3326 Records of Atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> Around the Last Three Glacial Terminations’.  
3327 *Science* **283**, 1712–1714.
- 3328 Fisk, L. A.: 1996, ‘Motion of the footpoints of heliospheric magnetic field lines at  
3329 the Sun: Implications for recurrent energetic particle events at high heliographic  
3330 latitudes’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **101**, 15547–15553.
- 3331 Fleitmann, D., S. J. Burns, M. Mudelsee, J. Neff, U. Kramers, A. Mangini, and A.  
3332 Matter: 2003, ‘Holocene Forcing of the Indian Monsoon Recorded in a Stalagmite  
3333 from Southern Oman’. *Science* **300**, 1737–1739.
- 3334 Florinski, V. and G. Zank: 2005, ‘Galactic cosmic ray response to heliospheric en-  
3335 vironment changes and implications for cosmogenic isotope records’. In: *Proc.*  
3336 *Int. Cosmic Ray Conf., Pune, Aug 3-10*. p. in press.
- 3337 Florinski, V., G. P. Zank, J. R. Jokipii, E. C. Stone, and A. C. Cummings: 2004, ‘Do  
3338 Anomalous Cosmic Rays Modify the Termination Shock?’. *Astrophys. J.* **610**,  
3339 1169–1181.
- 3340 Flückiger, E. O., R. Büttikofer, L. Desorgher, and M. R. Moser: 2003, ‘Global Cosmic  
3341 Ray Cutoff Rigidities Over the Past 2000 Years’. In: *Proc. 28th Int. Cosmic Ray*  
3342 *Conf.*, Vol. 7. p. 4229.
- 3343 Flückiger, E. O. and K. E.: 1990, ‘Aspects of Combining Models of the Earth’s  
3344 Internal and External Magnetic Fields’. *J. Geomag. Geoelectr.* **42**, 1123–1136.
- 3345 Foukal, P.: 2002, ‘A comparison of variable solar total and ultraviolet irradiance  
3346 outputs in the 20th century’. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **29**, 4–1.
- 3347 Frakes, L., E. Francis, and J. Syktus: 1992, *Climate modes of the Phanerozoic;*  
3348 *The history of the Earth’s climate over the past 600 million years*. Cambridge  
3349 University Press, Cambridge (U.K.).
- 3350 Frank, M.: 2000, ‘Comparison of cosmogenic radionuclide production and geomag-  
3351 netic field intensity over the last 200 000 years’. *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. A*  
3352 **358**, 1089–1107.
- 3353 Fraser-Smith, A.: 1985, ‘Centered and eccentric geomagnetic dipoles and their poles  
3354 1600-1985’. *Rev. geophys.* **25**, 1–16.
- 3355 Frisch, P. C.: 2000, ‘The galactic environment of the Sun’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **105**,  
3356 10279–10290.
- 3357 Gallet, Y., A. Genevey, and F. Fluteau: 2005, ‘Does Earth’s magnetic field secu-  
3358 lar variation control centennial climate change? [rapid communication]’. *Earth*  
3359 *Planet. Sci. Lett.* **236**, 339–347.
- 3360 Gardiner, L. T., T. Sawa, and M. Fujimoto: 1994, ‘Numerical Simulations of the  
3361 Magellanic System - Part One - Orbits of the Magellanic Clouds and the Global  
3362 Gas Distribution’. *Mon. Not. Roy. Astron. Soc.* **266**, 567–582.
- 3363 Geant4 Collaboration, S. Agostinelli, J. Allison, K. Amako, J. Apostolakis, H.  
3364 Araujo, P. Arce, M. Asai, D. Axen, S. Banerjee, G. Barrand, F. Behner, L.  
3365 Bellagamba, J. Boudreau, L. Broglia, A. Brunengo, H. Burkhardt, S. Chauvie, J.  
3366 Chuma, R. Chytracsek, G. Cooperman, G. Cosmo, P. Degtyarenko, A. dell’Acqua,  
3367 G. Depaola, D. Dietrich, R. Enami, A. Feliciello, C. Ferguson, H. Fesefeldt, G.

- 3368 Folger, F. Foppiano, A. Forti, S. Garelli, S. Giani, R. Giannitrapani, D. Gibin,  
 3369 J. J. Gómez Cadenas, I. González, G. Gracia Abril, G. Greeniaus, W. Greiner, V.  
 3370 Grichine, A. Grossheim, S. Guatelli, P. Gumplinger, R. Hamatsu, K. Hashimoto,  
 3371 H. Hasui, A. Heikkinen, A. Howard, V. Ivanchenko, A. Johnson, F. W. Jones, J.  
 3372 Kallenbach, N. Kanaya, M. Kawabata, Y. Kawabata, M. Kawaguti, S. Kelner,  
 3373 P. Kent, A. Kimura, T. Kodama, R. Kokoulin, M. Kossov, H. Kurashige, E.  
 3374 Lamanna, T. Lampén, V. Lara, V. Lefebure, F. Lei, M. Liendl, W. Lockman, F.  
 3375 Longo, S. Magni, M. Maire, E. Medernach, K. Minamimoto, P. Mora de Freitas,  
 3376 Y. Morita, K. Murakami, M. Nagamatu, R. Nartallo, P. Nieminen, T. Nishimura,  
 3377 K. Ohtsubo, M. Okamura, S. O’Neale, Y. Oohata, K. Paech, J. Perl, A. Pfeiffer,  
 3378 M. G. Pia, F. Ranjard, A. Rybin, S. Sadilov, E. di Salvo, G. Santin, T. Sasaki,  
 3379 N. Savvas, Y. Sawada, S. Scherer, S. Sei, V. Sirotenko, D. Smith, N. Starkov, H.  
 3380 Stoecker, J. Sulkimo, M. Takahata, S. Tanaka, E. Tcherniaev, E. Safai Tehrani,  
 3381 M. Tropeano, P. Truscott, H. Uno, L. Urban, P. Urban, M. Verderi, A. Walkden,  
 3382 W. Wander, H. Weber, J. P. Wellisch, T. Wenaus, D. C. Williams, D. Wright,  
 3383 T. Yamada, H. Yoshida, and D. Zschiesche: 2003, ‘Geant4-a simulation toolkit’.  
 3384 *Nuclear Instruments and Methods in Physics Research A* **506**, 250–303.
- 3385 Gierens, K. and M. Ponater: 1999, ‘Comment on “Variation of cosmic ray flux  
 3386 and global cloud coverage - a missing link in solar-climate relationships” by  
 3387 H. Svensmark and E. Friis-Christensen (1997)’. *Journal of Atmospheric and*  
 3388 *Terrestrial Physics* **61**, 795–797.
- 3389 Gies, D. R. and J. W. Helsel: 2005, ‘Ice Age Epochs and the Sun’s Path through  
 3390 the Galaxy’. *Astrophys. J.* **626**, 844–848.
- 3391 Gleeson, L. J. and W. I. Axford: 1968, ‘Solar Modulation of Galactic Cosmic Rays’.  
 3392 *Astrophys. J.* **154**, 1011–+.
- 3393 Gleisner, H., P. Thejll, M. Stendel, E. Kaas, and B. Machenhauer: 2005, ‘Solar  
 3394 signals in tropospheric re-analysis data: Comparing NCEP/NCAR and ERA40’.  
 3395 *J. Atm. Solar-Terrestrial Phys.* **67**, 785–791.
- 3396 Gosse, J. C., R. C. Reedy, C. D. Harrington, and J. Poths: 1996, ‘Overview of the  
 3397 workshop on secular variations in production rates of cosmogenic nuclides on  
 3398 Earth’. *Radiocarbon* **38**, 135–147.
- 3399 Gough, D. O.: 1981, ‘Solar interior structure and luminosity variations’. *Solar Phys.*  
 3400 **74**, 21–34.
- 3401 Graham, I. J., B. J. Barry, R. G. Ditchburn, and A. Zondervan: 2005, ‘Validation of  
 3402 cosmogenic nuclide production rate scaling factors through direct measurement.  
 3403 Part 2 - Production of <sup>7</sup>Be and <sup>10</sup>Be in water targets deployed in the Southern  
 3404 Hemisphere, 1997-2001’. *GNS Science Report* pp. 1–23.
- 3405 Gray, L., J. Haigh, and R. Harrison: 2005, ‘The influence of solar changes on the  
 3406 earth’s climate’. Technical report, Hadley Centre technical note 62. [www.met-](http://www.met-office.gov.uk/research/hadleycentre/pubs/HCTN/HCTN_62.pdf)  
 3407 [office.gov.uk/research/hadleycentre/pubs/HCTN/HCTN\\_62.pdf](http://www.met-office.gov.uk/research/hadleycentre/pubs/HCTN/HCTN_62.pdf).
- 3408 Grieder, P. K. F.: 2001, *Cosmic rays at Earth, Researcher’s reference manual and*  
 3409 *data book*. Elsevier.
- 3410 Grove, J. M.: 1988, *The Little Ice Age*. Routledge.
- 3411 Gupta, A. K., M. Das, and D. M. Anderson: 2005, ‘Solar influence on the Indian  
 3412 summer monsoon during the Holocene’. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **32**, 17703–+.
- 3413 Guyodo, Y. and J.-P. Valet: 1999, ‘Global changes in intensity of the Earth’s  
 3414 magnetic field during the past 800 kyr 249’. *Nature* **399**, 249–251.
- 3415 Haigh, J. D.: 1994, ‘The Role of Stratospheric Ozone in Modulating the Solar  
 3416 Radiative Forcing of Climate’. *Nature* **370**, 544–+.
- 3417 Hampel, W. and O. A. Schaeffer: 1979, ‘Al-26 in iron meteorites and the constancy  
 3418 of cosmic ray intensity in the past’. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **42**, 348–358.

- 3419 Harland, W., R. Armstrong, A. Cox, L. Craig, A. Smith, and D. Smith: 1990, *A*  
3420 *Geologic Time Scale 1989*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.
- 3421 Harrison, R. G. and D. B. Stephenson: 2006, ‘Empirical evidence for nonlinear effect  
3422 of galactic cosmic rays on clouds’. *Proc. R. Soc. A* pp. 1–13.
- 3423 Hartquist, T. W. and G. E. Morfill: 1983, ‘Evidence for the stochastic acceleration  
3424 of cosmic rays in supernova remnants’. *Astrophys. J.* **266**, 271–275.
- 3425 Heath, D. F., A. J. Krueger, and P. J. Crutzen: 1977, ‘Solar Proton Event: Influence  
3426 on Stratospheric Ozone’. *Science* **197**, 886–889.
- 3427 Heber, B.: 2001, ‘Modulation of galactic and anomalous cosmic rays in the inner  
3428 heliosphere’. *Advances in Space Research* **27**, 451–460.
- 3429 Heber, B., J. M. Clem, R. Müller-Mellin, H. Kunow, S. E. S. Ferreira, and M. S.  
3430 Potgieter: 2003, ‘Evolution of the galactic cosmic ray electron to proton ratio:  
3431 Ulysses COSPIN/KET observations’. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **30**, 6–1.
- 3432 Heber, B. and M. S. Potgieter: 2000, ‘Galactic Cosmic Ray Observations at Different  
3433 Heliospheric Latitudes’. *Advances in Space Research* **26**, 839–852.
- 3434 Heber, B., T. R. Sanderson, and M. Zhang: 1999, ‘Corotating interaction regions’.  
3435 *Advances in Space Research* **23**, 567–579.
- 3436 Heerikhuisen, J., V. Florinski, and G. P. Zank: 2006, ‘Interaction between the  
3437 solar wind and interstellar gas: a comparison between Monte-Carlo and fluid  
3438 approaches’. *submitted* , .
- 3439 Hess, W. N., E. H. Canfield, and R. E. Lingenfelter: 1961, ‘Cosmic-Ray Neutron  
3440 Demography’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **66**, 665–+.
- 3441 Higginson, M. J., M. A. Altabet, L. Wincze, T. D. Herbert, and D. W. Murray: 2004,  
3442 ‘A solar (irradiance) trigger for millennial-scale abrupt changes in the southwest  
3443 monsoon?’. *Paleoceanography* **19**, 3015–+.
- 3444 Hodell, D. A., M. Brenner, J. H. Curtis, and T. Guilderson: 2001, ‘Solar Forcing of  
3445 Drought Frequency in the Maya Lowlands’. *Science* **292**, 1367–1370.
- 3446 Hoeksema, J. T.: 1992, ‘Large-scale structure of the heliospheric magnetic field -  
3447 1976-1991’. In: *Solar Wind Seven Colloquium*. pp. 191–196.
- 3448 Holland, H. D.: 1984, *Chemical Evolution of the Atmosphere and Oceans*. Princeton  
3449 University Press, Princeton, U.S.A.
- 3450 Hoyle, F.: 1984, ‘On the Causes of Ice-Ages’. *Earth Moon and Planets* **31**, 229–+.
- 3451 Hoyle, F. and R. A. Lyttleton: 1939, ‘The effect of interstellar matter on climatic  
3452 variation’. In: *Proceedings of the Cambridge Philosophical Society*. pp. 405–+.
- 3453 Hu, F. S., D. Kaufman, S. Yoneji, D. Nelson, A. Shemesh, Y. Huang, J. Tian, G.  
3454 Bond, B. Clegg, and T. Brown: 2003, ‘Cyclic Variation and Solar Forcing of  
3455 Holocene Climate in the Alaskan Subarctic’. *Science* **301**, 1890–1893.
- 3456 Imbrie, J., J. Hays, D. Martinson, A. McIntyre, A. Mix, J. Morley, N. Pisias, W.  
3457 Prell, and N. Shackleton: 1984, ‘The orbital theory of Pleistocene climate: sup-  
3458 port from a revised chronology of the marine square 180 record’. In: N. S.  
3459 A.L. Berger, J. Imbrie (ed.): *Milankovitch and Climate, Part 1*. pp. 269–305,  
3460 Reidel.
- 3461 Indermühle, A., T. Stocker, F. Joos, H. Fischer, H. Smith, M. Wahlen, B. Deck, D.  
3462 Mastroianni, J. Tschumi, T. Blunier, R. Meyer, and B. Stauffer: 1999, ‘Holocene  
3463 carbon-cycle dynamics based on C O<sub>2</sub> trapped in ice at Taylor Dome, Antarctica  
3464 121’. *Nature* **398**, 121–127.
- 3465 IPCC (ed.): 2001, ‘Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change: 2001, Climate  
3466 Change 2001: The Scientific Basis’. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge,  
3467 U.K.
- 3468 Izmodenov, V.: 2001, ‘Velocity Distribution of Interstellar H Atoms in the Helio-  
3469 spheric Interface’. *Space Science Reviews* **97**, 385–388.

- 3470 Izmodenov, V. V.: 2004, 'The Heliospheric Interface: Models and Observations'. In:  
3471 *ASSL Vol. 317: The Sun and the Heliosphere as an Integrated System*. pp. 23–+.
- 3472 Jackman, C. H., E. L. Fleming, and F. M. Vitt: 2000, 'Influence of extremely large  
3473 solar proton events in a changing stratosphere'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **105**, 11659–  
3474 11670.
- 3475 Jiang, H., J. Eiríksson, M. Schulz, K.-L. Knudsen, and M.-S. Seidenkrantz: 2005,  
3476 'Evidence for solar forcing of sea-surface temperature on the North Icelandic  
3477 Shelf during the late Holocene'. *Geology* **33**, 73–76.
- 3478 Jokipii, J. R.: 1971, 'Propagation of cosmic rays in the solar wind'. *Rev. Geophys.*  
3479 *Space Phys.* **9**(1), 27–87.
- 3480 Jokipii, J. R. and J. Kota: 1989, 'The polar heliospheric magnetic field'. *Geophys.*  
3481 *Res. Lett.* **16**, 1–4.
- 3482 Jokipii, J. R., E. H. Levy, and W. B. Hubbard: 1977, 'Effects of particle drift on  
3483 cosmic-ray transport. I. General properties, application to solar modulation'.  
3484 *Astrophys. J.* **213**(3), 861–868.
- 3485 Kandel, R. and M. Viollier: 2005, 'Planetary Radiation Budgets'. *Space Science*  
3486 *Reviews* **120**, 1–2.
- 3487 Kasting, J. and S. Ono: 2005, '██████'. *in press, Proc. Roy. Soc. London*.██████.
- 3488 Kasting, J. F.: 1993, 'Earth's early atmosphere'. *Science* **259**, 920–926.
- 3489 Kernthaler, S. C., R. Toumi, and J. D. Haigh: 1999, 'Some doubts concerning a  
3490 link between cosmic ray fluxes and global cloudiness'. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **26**,  
3491 863–866.
- 3492 Kilcik, A.: 2005, 'Regional sun–climate interaction'. *J. Atmos. Solar-Terr. Phys.*  
3493 **67**, 1573–1579.
- 3494 Knauth, L. and D. Lowe: 2003, 'High Archean climatic temperature inferred from  
3495 oxygen isotope geochemistry of cherts in the 3.5 Ga Swaziland Supergroup, South  
3496 Africa.'. *Geol. Soc. Am. Bull.* **115**, 566–580.
- 3497 Kocharov, G.: 1991, 'Cosmic rays in the past'. *Nuclear Physics B Proceedings*  
3498 *Supplements* **22**, 153–164.
- 3499 Korte, M. and C. G. Constable: 2005a, 'Continuous geomagnetic field models for the  
3500 past 7 millennia: 2. CALS7K'. *Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems* **6**, 2–+.
- 3501 Korte, M. and C. G. Constable: 2005b, 'The geomagnetic dipole moment over the  
3502 last 7000 years-new results from a global model [rapid communication]'. *Earth*  
3503 *and Planetary Science Letters* **236**, 348–358.
- 3504 Kristjánsson, J. E., J. Kristiansen, and E. Kaas: 2004, 'Solar activity, cosmic rays,  
3505 clouds and climate - an update'. *Advances in Space Research* **34**, 407–415.
- 3506 Krymskii, G. F.: 1977a, 'A regular mechanism for accelerating charged particles at  
3507 the shock front'. *Akademiia Nauk SSSR Doklady* **234**, 1306–1308.
- 3508 Krymskii, G. F.: 1977b, 'A regular mechanism for the acceleration of charged  
3509 particles on the front of a shock wave'. *Akademiia Nauk SSSR Doklady* **234**,  
3510 1306–1308.
- 3511 Kuroda, Y. and K. Kodera: 2005, 'Solar cycle modulation of the Southern Annular  
3512 Mode'. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **32**, L13802.
- 3513 Labitzke, K., J. Austin, N. Butchart, J. Knight, M. Takahashi, M. Nakamoto, T.  
3514 Nagashima, J. Haigh, and V. Williams: 2002, 'The global signal of the 11-year  
3515 solar cycle in the stratosphere: observations and models'. *Journal of Atmospheric*  
3516 *and Terrestrial Physics* **64**, 203–210.
- 3517 Laj, C., C. Kissel, A. Mazaud, J. Channell, and J. Beer: 2000, 'North Atlantic  
3518 Paleointensity Stack Since 75 ka (NAPIS-75) and The Duration of the Laschamp  
3519 Event'. *Phil. Trans. Royal Soc. of London* **358**, 1009–1025.

- 3520 Laj, C., C. Kissel, A. Mazaud, E. Michel, R. Muscheler, and J. Beer: 2002, 'Geo-  
3521 magnetic field intensity, North Atlantic Deep Water circulation and atmospheric  
3522  $\Delta^{14}\text{C}$  during the last 50 kyr'. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters* **200**, 177–190.
- 3523 Lal, D.: 1988, 'Theoretically expected variations in the terrestrial cosmic-ray pro-  
3524 duction rates of isotopes'. In: *Solar-Terrestrial Relationships and the Earth*  
3525 *Environment in the last Millennia*. pp. 216–+.
- 3526 Lal, D.: 1991, 'Cosmic ray labeling of erosion surfaces - In situ nuclide production  
3527 rates and erosion models'. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **104**, 424–439.
- 3528 Lal, D. and B. Peters: 1967, 'Cosmic ray produced radioactivity on the Earth'. In:  
3529 *Handbuch der Physik*, Vol. XLVI/2. Springer, Berlin, pp. 551–612.
- 3530 Langel, R. A.: 1992, 'International Geomagnetic Reference Field: The sixth genera-  
3531 tion'. *J. Geomagn. Geoelectr.* **44**, 679.
- 3532 Langner, U. W. and M. S. Potgieter: 2004, 'Effects of the solar wind termination  
3533 shock and heliosheath on the heliospheric modulation of galactic and anomalous  
3534 Helium'. *Annales Geophysicae* **22**, 3063–3072.
- 3535 Langner, U. W. and M. S. Potgieter: 2005a, 'Effects of the position of the solar wind  
3536 termination shock and the heliopause on the heliospheric modulation of cosmic  
3537 rays'. *Advances in Space Research* **35**, 2084–2090.
- 3538 Langner, U. W. and M. S. Potgieter: 2005b, 'The heliospheric modulation of cosmic  
3539 ray protons during increased solar activity: effects of the position of the solar wind  
3540 termination shock and of the heliopause'. *Annales Geophysicae* **23**, 1499–1504.
- 3541 Langner, U. W. and M. S. Potgieter: 2005c, 'Modulation of Galactic Protons in an  
3542 Asymmetrical Heliosphere'. *Astrophys. J.* **630**, 1114–1124.
- 3543 Langner, U. W., M. S. Potgieter, T. Borrmann, and H. Fichtner: 2005a, 'Effects of  
3544 different solar wind speed profiles in the heliosheath on the modulation of cosmic  
3545 ray protons.'. *Astrophys. J.* **in press**.
- 3546 Langner, U. W., M. S. Potgieter, T. Borrmann, and H. Fichtner: 2005b, 'Modula-  
3547 tion of anomalous protons: Effects of different solar wind speed profiles in the  
3548 heliosheath.'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **in press**.
- 3549 Langner, U. W., M. S. Potgieter, and W. R. Webber: 2003, 'Modulation of cosmic  
3550 ray protons in the heliosheath'. *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space Physics)*  
3551 **108**, 14–+.
- 3552 Lanzerotti, L. J. and C. G. MacLennan: 2000, 'Low-Energy Anomalous Cosmic Rays  
3553 in the Ecliptic Plane: 1-5 AU'. *Astrophys. J. Lett.* **534**, L109–L112.
- 3554 Lassen, K. and E. Friis-Christensen: 1995, 'Variability of the solar cycle length during  
3555 the past five centuries and the apparent association with terrestrial climate'.  
3556 *Journal of Atmospheric and Terrestrial Physics* **57**, 835–845.
- 3557 Lavielle, B., K. Marti, J.-P. Jeannot, K. Nishiizumi, and M. Caffee: 1999, 'The  $^{36}\text{Cl}$ -  
3558  $^{36}\text{Ar}$ - $^{40}\text{K}$ - $^{41}\text{K}$  records and cosmic ray production rates in iron meteorites'. *Earth*  
3559 *Planet. Sci. Lett.* **170**, 93–104.
- 3560 Le Mouél, J.-L., V. Kossobokov, and V. Courtillot: 2005, 'On long-term variations  
3561 of simple geomagnetic indices and slow changes in magnetospheric currents: The  
3562 emergence of anthropogenic global warming after 1990?'. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.*  
3563 **232**, 273–286.
- 3564 le Roux, J. A. and M. S. Potgieter: 1989, 'Episodic cosmic-ray modulation in the  
3565 heliosphere'. *Advances in Space Research* **9**, 225–228.
- 3566 le Roux, J. A. and M. S. Potgieter: 1995, 'The simulation of complete 11 and 12  
3567 year modulation cycles for cosmic rays in the heliosphere using a drift model  
3568 with global merged interaction regions'. *Astrophys. J.* **442**, 847–851.
- 3569 Lean, J.: 2005, 'Living with a Variable Sun'. *Physics Today* **58**, 32–38.
- 3570 Lee, s.: 2003, '██████'. **0(0)**, 0.

- 3571 Lei, F. S. C., C. Dyer, and P. Truscott: 2004, ‘An atmospheric radiation model based  
3572 on response matrices generated by detailed Monte Carlo simulations of cosmic  
3573 ray interactions’. *IEEE Trans Nucl Sci* **51**(6), 3442–3451.
- 3574 Leitch, E. M. and G. Vasisht: 1998, ‘Mass extinctions and the sun’s encounters with  
3575 spiral arms’. *New Astronomy* **3**, 51–56.
- 3576 Lerche, I. and R. Schlickeiser: 1982a, ‘On the transport and propagation of cosmic  
3577 rays in galaxies. I - Solution of the steady-state transport equation for cosmic  
3578 ray nucleons, momentum spectra and heating of the interstellar medium’. *Mon.  
3579 Not. Roy. Astron. Soc.* **201**, 1041–1072.
- 3580 Lerche, I. and R. Schlickeiser: 1982b, ‘On the transport and propagation of relativistic  
3581 electrons in galaxies The effect of adiabatic deceleration in a galactic wind  
3582 for the steady state case’. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **107**, 148–160.
- 3583 Lerche, I. and R. Schlickeiser: 1982c, ‘Transport and propagation of cosmic rays  
3584 in galaxies. II - The effect of a galactic wind on the mean lifetime and age  
3585 distribution of non-decaying cosmic rays’. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **116**, 10–26.
- 3586 Light, E. S., M. Merker, H. J. Vershell, R. B. Mendel, and S. A. Korff: 1973, ‘Time  
3587 dependent worldwide distribution of atmospheric neutrons and of their products,  
3588 2, Calculations’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **78**, 2741–2762.
- 3589 Lim, J., E. Matsumoto, and H. Kitagawa: 2005, ‘Eolian quartz flux variations  
3590 in Cheju Island, Korea, during the last 6500 yr and a possible Sun–monsoon  
3591 linkage’. *Quatern. Res.* **64**, 12–20.
- 3592 Lin, C. C. and F. H. Shu: 1964, ‘On the Spiral Structure of Disk Galaxies.’.  
3593 *Astrophys. J.* **140**, 646–655.
- 3594 Lin, D. N. C., B. F. Jones, and A. R. Klemola: 1995, ‘The motion of the Magel-  
3595 lanic clouds, origin of the Magellanic Stream, and the mass of the Milky Way’.  
3596 *Astrophys. J.* **439**, 652–671.
- 3597 Lingenfelter, R. E.: 1963, ‘Production of carbon-14 by cosmic-ray neutrons’. *Rev.  
3598 Geophys* **1**, 35–55.
- 3599 Lipatov, A. S., G. P. Zank, and H. L. Pauls: 1998, ‘The interaction of neutral inter-  
3600 stellar H with the heliosphere: A 2.5-D particle-mesh Boltzmann simulation’. *J.  
3601 Geophys. Res.* **103**, 20631–20642.
- 3602 Lisenfeld, U., P. Alexander, G. G. Pooley, and T. Wilding: 1996, ‘Constraints on  
3603 cosmic ray propagation from radio continuum data of NGC 2146.’. *Mon. Not.  
3604 Roy. Astron. Soc.* **281**, 301–310.
- 3605 Loktin, A. V., N. V. Matkin, and T. P. Gerasimenko: 1994, ‘Catalogue of open cluster  
3606 parameters from UBV-data.’. *Astronomical and Astrophysical Transactions* **4**,  
3607 153.
- 3608 Longair, M. S.: 1994, *High energy astrophysics. Vol.2: Stars, the galaxy and the  
3609 interstellar medium*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994, 2nd ed.
- 3610 Lowder, W., P. D. Raft, and H. Beck: 1971, ‘Experimental determination of cosmic-  
3611 ray charged particle intensity profiles in the atmosphere’. In: E. A. Warman  
3612 (ed.): *Proceedings of the national symposium of natural and manmade radiation  
3613 in space*. pp. 908–913.
- 3614 Lukasiak, A., P. Ferrando, F. B. McDonald, and W. R. Webber: 1994, ‘The isotopic  
3615 composition of cosmic-ray beryllium and its implication for the cosmic ray’s age’.  
3616 *Astrophys. J.* **423**, 426–431.
- 3617 Magny, M.: 1993, ‘Solar Influences on Holocene Climatic Changes Illustrated by  
3618 Correlations between Past Lake-Level Fluctuations and the Atmospheric <sup>14</sup>C  
3619 Record’. *Quatern. Res.* **40**, 1–9.
- 3620 Malkov, M. A. and L. O’C Drury: 2001, ‘Nonlinear theory of diffusive acceleration  
3621 of particles by shock waves’. *Reports of Progress in Physics* **64**, 429–481.

- 3622 Mangini, A., C. Spötl, and P. Verdes: 2005, 'Reconstruction of temperature in the  
3623 Central Alps during the past 2000 yr from a  $\delta^{18}O$  stalagmite record [rapid  
3624 communication]'. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **235**, 741–751.
- 3625 Mann, M. E., R. S. Bradley, and M. K. Hughes: 1999, 'Northern hemisphere tem-  
3626 peratures during the past millennium: Inferences, uncertainties, and limitations'.  
3627 *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **26**, 759–762.
- 3628 Marsh, N. and H. Svensmark: 2000a, 'Cosmic Rays, Clouds, and Climate'. *Space  
3629 Science Reviews* **94**, 215–230.
- 3630 Marsh, N. D. and H. Svensmark: 2000b, 'Low Cloud Properties Influenced by Cosmic  
3631 Rays'. *Physical Review Letters* **85**, 5004–5007.
- 3632 Martinson, D., N. Pisias, J. Hays, J. Imbrie, T. J. Moore, and N. Shackleton:  
3633 1987, 'Age dating and the orbital theory of the ice ages: Development of a  
3634 high-resolution 0 to 300,000-year chronostratigraphy'. *Quatern. Res.* **27**, 1–29.
- 3635 Masarik, J. and J. Beer: 1999, 'Simulation of particle fluxes and cosmogenic nuclide  
3636 production in the Earth's atmosphere'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **104**, 12099–12112.
- 3637 Masarik, J. and R. C. Reedy: 1994, 'Effects of bulk chemical composition on nuclide  
3638 production processes in meteorites'. *Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta* **58**, 5307–5317.
- 3639 Masarik, J. and R. C. Reedy: 1995, 'Terrestrial cosmogenic-nuclide production sys-  
3640 tematics calculated from numerical simulations'. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **136**,  
3641 381–395.
- 3642 Matthaeus, W. H., G. Qin, J. W. Bieber, and G. P. Zank: 2003, 'Nonlinear colli-  
3643 sionless perpendicular diffusion of charged particles'. *Astrophys. J. Lett.* **590**(1),  
3644 L53–L56.
- 3645 McComas, D. J., R. Goldstein, J. T. Gosling, and R. M. Skoug: 2001, 'Ulysses'  
3646 Second Orbit: Remarkably Different Solar Wind'. *Space Science Reviews* **97**,  
3647 99–103.
- 3648 McCracken, K. and F. McDonald: 2001, 'The Long Term Modulation of the Galactic  
3649 Cosmic Radiation, 1100-2000 AD'. In: *International Cosmic Ray Conference*. pp.  
3650 3753–+.
- 3651 McCracken, K. G., J. Beer, and F. B. McDonald: 2002, 'A five-year variability in the  
3652 modulation of the galactic cosmic radiation over epochs of low solar activity'.  
3653 *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **29**, 14–1.
- 3654 McCracken, K. G., F. B. McDonald, J. Beer, G. Raisbeck, and F. Yiou: 2004, 'A  
3655 phenomenological study of the long-term cosmic ray modulation, 850-1958 AD'.  
3656 *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space Physics)* **109**, 12103–+.
- 3657 McCrea, W. H.: 1975, 'Ice ages and the Galaxy'. *Nature* **255**, 607–609.
- 3658 McCrea, W. H.: 1981, 'Long time-scale fluctuations in the evolution of the Earth'.  
3659 *Proc. R. Soc. Lond. A* **375**, 1–41.
- 3660 McDonald, F. B., J. H. Trainor, N. Lal, M. A. I. van Hollebeke, and W. R. Webber:  
3661 1981, 'The solar modulation of galactic cosmic rays in the outer heliosphere'.  
3662 *Astrophys. J. Lett.* **249**, L71–L75.
- 3663 McElhinny, M. W. and W. Senanayake: 1982, 'Variations in the Geomagnetic Dipole,  
3664 I: the past 50 000 years'. *J. Geomagn. Geoelectr.* **34**, 38–51.
- 3665 McKay, C. P. and G. E. Thomas: 1978, 'Consequences of a past encounter of the  
3666 earth with an interstellar cloud'. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **5**, 215–218.
- 3667 McPherron, R. L.: 1995, 'Magnetospheric dynamics'. In: M. G. Kivelson and C. T.  
3668 Russel (eds.): *Introduction to Space Physics*. Cambridge university press.
- 3669 Mears, C. A. and F. J. Wentz: 2005, 'The Effect of Diurnal Correction on Satellite-  
3670 Derived Lower Tropospheric Temperature'. *Science* **309**, 1548–1551.
- 3671 Milankovitch, M.: 1941, 'Kanon der Erdbestrahlung und seine Anwendung auf das  
3672 Eiszeitproblem'. *Roy. Serb. Acad. Spec. Publ.* **133**, 1–633. (Translation by.



- israel Progr. For Scientific Translation, and published for U.S. Department of  
 Commerce and Nat. Sci. Found.), 1974.
- Mitchell, J., D. Karoly, G. Hegerl, F. Zwiers, M. Allen, and J. Marengo: 2001,  
 ‘Detection of climate change and attribution of causes. Contribution of Working  
 Group I to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on  
 Climate Change (Ch. 1)’. In: J. Houghton, Y. Ding, D. Griggs, M. Noguer, P.  
 van der Linden, X. Dai, K. Maskell, and C. Johnson (eds.): *Climate Change 2001:  
 The Scientific Basis*. pp. 695–738, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, U.K.
- Mitchell, J. J.: 1976, ‘An Overview of Climatic Variability and Its Causal Mecha-  
 nism’. *Quaternary Res.* **6**, 481–493.
- Miyahara, H., K. Masudaa, H. Menjoa, K. Kuwanaa, Y. Murakia, and T. Naka-  
 murab: 2005, ‘Variation of the cosmic ray intensity during the Maunder Minimum  
 deduced from carbon-14 content in tree-rings’. In: *Proc. 29th Int. Cosmic Ray  
 Conf. Aug 2-10, Pune, India, paper in SH 3.4*.
- Moberg, A., D. Sonechkin, K. Holmgren, N. Datsenko, and K. Wibjörn: 2005, ‘Highly  
 variable Northern Hemisphere temperatures reconstructed from low- and high-  
 resolution proxy data’. *Nature* **433**, 613–617.
- Monnin, E., A. Indermühle, A. Dällenbach, J. Flückiger, B. Stauffer, T. F. Stocker,  
 D. Raynaud, and J.-M. Barnola: 2001, ‘Atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> Concentrations over  
 the Last Glacial Termination’. *Science* **291**, 112–114.
- Moraal, H., M. S. Potgieter, P. H. Stoker, and A. J. van der Walt: 1989, ‘Neu-  
 tron monitor latitude survey of cosmic ray intensity during the 1986/1987 solar  
 minimum’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **94**, 1459–1464.
- Moskalenko, I. V., A. W. Strong, S. G. Mashnik, and J. F. Ormes: 2003, ‘Challeng-  
 ing Cosmic-Ray Propagation with Antiprotons: Evidence for a “Fresh” Nuclei  
 Component?’. *Astrophys. J.* **586**, 1050–1066.
- Moskalenko, I. V., A. W. Strong, J. F. Ormes, and M. S. Potgieter: 2002, ‘Secondary  
 Antiprotons and Propagation of Cosmic Rays in the Galaxy and Heliosphere’.  
*Astrophys. J.* **565**, 280–296.
- Mudelsee, M.: 2001, ‘The phase relations among atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub> content, tem-  
 perature and global ice volume over the past 420 ka’. *Quat. Sci. Rev.* **20**,  
 583–589.
- Mudelsee, M. and M. Raymo: 2005, ‘Slow dynamics of the Northern Hemisphere  
 glaciation’. *Paleoceanography* **20**, PA4022.
- Müller, H.-R., G. P. Zank, and A. S. Lipatov: 2000, ‘Self-consistent hybrid simula-  
 tions of the interaction of the heliosphere with the local interstellar medium’. *J.  
 Geophys. Res.* **105**, 27419–27438.
- Muller, R. A. and G. J. MacDonald: 1997, ‘Glacial cycles and astronomical forcing’.  
*Science* **277**, 215–218.
- Muscheler, R., J. Beer, P. W. Kubik, and H. A. Synal: 2005a, ‘Geomagnetic field  
 intensity during the last 60,000 years based on <sup>10</sup>Be and <sup>36</sup>Cl from the  
 Summit ice cores and <sup>14</sup>C’. *Quaternary Science Reviews* **24**, 1849–1860.
- Muscheler, R., F. Joos, S. Müller, and I. Snowball: 2005b, ‘Climate: How unusual is  
 today’s solar activity?’. *Nature* **436**, E3–E4.
- Naoz, S. and N. J. Shaviv: 2004, ‘Open Star Clusters and the Milky Way’s Spiral  
 Arm Dynamics’. Submitted to *New Astronomy*.
- Ndiitwani, D. C., S. E. S. Ferreira, M. S. Potgieter, and B. Heber: 2005, ‘Modelling  
 cosmic ray intensities along the Ulysses trajectory’. *Annales Geophysicae* **23**,  
 1061–1070.

- 3722 Neff, U., S. J. Burns, A. Mangini, M. Mudelsee, D. Fleitmann, and A. Matter: 2001,  
3723 'Strong coherence between solar variability and the monsoon in Oman between  
3724 9 and 6kyr ago'. *Nature* **411**, 290–293.
- 3725 Neher, H. V.: 1971, 'Cosmic rays at high latitudes and altitudes covering four solar  
3726 maxima'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **76**, 1637–1651.
- 3727 Newkirk, L. L.: 1963, 'Calculation of Low-Energy Neutron Flux in the Atmosphere  
3728 by the  $S_n$  Method'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **68**, 1825–+.
- 3729 Ney, E. P.: 1959, 'Cosmic Radiation and Weather'. *Nature* **183**, 451.
- 3730 Niggemann, S., A. Mangini, M. Mudelsee, D. K. Richter, and G. Wurth: 2003, 'Sub-  
3731 Milankovitch climatic cycles in Holocene stalagmites from Sauerland, Germany'.  
3732 *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **216**, 539–547.
- 3733 Nir, A., S. T. Kruger, R. E. Lingenfelter, and E. J. Flamm: 1966, 'Natural tritium'.  
3734 *Rev. Geophys.* **4**, 441–456.
- 3735 O'Brien, K.: 1979, 'Secular variations in the production of cosmogenic isotopes in  
3736 the earth's atmosphere'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **84**, 423–431.
- 3737 O'Brien, K., L. A., de la Zerda, M. Shea, and D. Smart: 1991, 'The production of  
3738 cosmogenic isotopes in the Earth's atmosphere and their invent ories,'. In: M. M.  
3739 C.P. Sonett, M.S. Giampapa (ed.): *The sun in time*,. pp. 317–342, Univ. Ariz.  
3740 Press.
- 3741 O'C Drury, L.: 1983, 'On particle acceleration in supernova remnants'. *Space Science*  
3742 *Reviews* **36**, 57–60.
- 3743 Oeschger, H., J. Houtermann, H. Loosli, and M. Wahlen: 1969, 'The constancy of  
3744 cosmic radiation from isotope studies in meteorites and on the Earth'. In: I. U.  
3745 Olsen (ed.): *Radiocarbon Variations and Absolute Chronology, Nobel symposium*,.  
3746 John Wiley.
- 3747 Olson, W. P. and K. A. Pfitzer: 1982, 'A dynamic model of the magnetospheric  
3748 magnetic and electric fields for July 29, 1977'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **87**, 5943–5948.
- 3749 Opher, M., P. C. Liewer, M. Velli, L. Bettarini, T. I. Gombosi, W. Manchester, D. L.  
3750 DeZeeuw, G. Toth, and I. Sokolov: 2004, 'Magnetic Effects at the Edge of the  
3751 Solar System: MHD Instabilities, the de Laval Nozzle Effect, and an Extended  
3752 Jet'. *Astrophys. J.* **611**, 575–586.
- 3753 Ostapenko, A. A. and Y. P. Maltsev: 2000, 'Storm time variation in the magneto-  
3754 spheric magnetic field'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **105**, 311–316.
- 3755 Pagani, M., J. C. Zachos, K. H. Freeman, B. Tipple, and S. Bohaty: 2005, 'Marked  
3756 Decline in Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide Concentrations During the Paleogene'.  
3757 *Science* **309**, 600–603.
- 3758 Pallé, E., C. J. Butler, and K. O'Brien: 2004, 'The possible connection between  
3759 ionization in the atmosphere by cosmic rays and low level clouds'. *Journal of*  
3760 *Atmospheric and Terrestrial Physics* **66**, 1779–1790.
- 3761 Pallé, E., P. Montañés-Rodríguez, P. R. Goode, S. E. Koonin, M. Wild, and S.  
3762 Casadio: 2005, 'A multi-data comparison of shortwave climate forcing changes'.  
3763 *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **32**, 21702–+.
- 3764 Palle Bago, E. and J. Butler: 2000, 'The influence of cosmic terrestrial clouds and  
3765 global warming'. *Astronomy & Geophysics* **41**, 18–22.
- 3766 Palous, J., J. Ruprecht, O. B. Dluhnevskajaia, and T. Piskunov: 1977, 'Places of  
3767 formation of 24 open clusters'. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **61**, 27–37.
- 3768 Parker, E. N.: 1958, 'Dynamics of the Interplanetary Gas and Magnetic Fields.'. *Astrophys. J.* **128**, 664–+.
- 3769 Parker, E. N.: 1965, 'The passage of energetic charged particles through interplan-  
3770 etary space'. *Planet. Space Sci.* **13**, 9–49.

- 3772 Perko, J. S. and L. A. Fisk: 1983, ‘Solar modulation of galactic cosmic rays. V -  
3773 Time-dependent modulation’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **88**, 9033–9036.
- 3774 Petit, J. R., J. Jouzel, D. Raynaud, N. I. Barkov, J.-M. Barnola, I. Basile, M.  
3775 Bender, J. Chappellaz, M. Davis, G. Delaygue, M. Delmotte, V. M. Kotlyakov,  
3776 M. Legrand, V. Y. Lipenkov, C. Lorius, L. Pépin, C. Ritz, E. Saltzman, and  
3777 M. Stievenard: 1999, ‘Climate and atmospheric history of the past 420,000 years  
3778 from the Vostok ice core, Antarctica’. *Nature* **399**, 429–437.
- 3779 Pinker, R. T., B. Zhang, and E. G. Dutton: 2005, ‘Do Satellites Detect Trends in  
3780 Surface Solar Radiation?’. *Science* **308**, 850–854.
- 3781 Pogorelov, N. V.: 2004, ‘Three-dimensional structure of the outer heliosphere in the  
3782 presence of the interstellar and interplanetary magnetic fields’. In: *AIP Conf.*  
3783 *Proc. 719: Physics of the Outer Heliosphere*. pp. 39–46.
- 3784 Pogorelov, N. V. and G. P. Zank: 2005, ‘Coupling of the interstellar and interplane-  
3785 tary magnetic fields at the heliospheric interface: The effect of neutral hydrogen  
3786 atoms’. *Advances in Space Research* **35**, 2055–2060.
- 3787 Pogorelov, N. V., G. P. Zank, and T. Ogino: 2004, ‘Three-dimensional Features of  
3788 the Outer Heliosphere Due to Coupling between the Interstellar and Interplane-  
3789 tary Magnetic Fields. I. Magnetohydrodynamic Model: Interstellar Perspective’.  
3790 *Astrophys. J.* **614**, 1007–1021.
- 3791 Poore, R. Z., T. M. Quinn, and S. Verardo: 2004, ‘Century-scale movement of the  
3792 Atlantic Intertropical Convergence Zone linked to solar variability’. *Geophys.*  
3793 *Res. Lett.* **31**, 12214+.
- 3794 Porter, H. S., C. H. Jackman, and A. E. S. Green: 1976, ‘Efficiencies for production  
3795 of atomic nitrogen and oxygen by relativistic proton impact in air’. *J. Comp.*  
3796 *Phys.* **65**, 154–167.
- 3797 Potgieter, M. S.: 1995, ‘The long-term modulation of galactic cosmic rays in the  
3798 heliosphere’. *Advances in Space Research* **16**, 191–.
- 3799 Potgieter, M. S.: 1998, ‘The Modulation of Galactic Cosmic Rays in the Heliosphere:  
3800 Theory and Models’. *Space Science Reviews* **83**, 147–158.
- 3801 Potgieter, M. S., R. A. Burger, and S. E. S. Ferreira: 2001, ‘Modulation of Cos-  
3802 mic Rays in the Heliosphere From Solar Minimum to Maximum: a Theoretical  
3803 Perspective’. *Space Science Reviews* **97**, 295–307.
- 3804 Potgieter, M. S. and S. E. S. Ferreira: 2001, ‘Modulation of cosmic rays in the  
3805 heliosphere over 11 and 22 year cycles: a modelling perspective’. *Advances in*  
3806 *Space Research* **27**, 481–492.
- 3807 Potgieter, M. S. and U. W. Langner: 2004, ‘Heliospheric Modulation of Cosmic-  
3808 Ray Positrons and Electrons: Effects of the Heliosheath and the Solar Wind  
3809 Termination Shock’. *Astrophys. J.* **602**, 993–1001.
- 3810 Potgieter, M. S. and H. Moraal: 1985, ‘A drift model for the modulation of galactic  
3811 cosmic rays’. *Astrophys. J.* **294**, 425–440.
- 3812 Pozo-Vázquez, D., J. Tovar-Pescador, S. R. Gámiz-Fortis, M. J. Esteban-Parra, and  
3813 Y. Castro-Díez: 2004, ‘NAO and solar radiation variability in the European North  
3814 Atlantic region’. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **31**, 5201+.
- 3815 Prael, R. E. and H. Lichtenstein: 1989, ‘User guide to LCS: The LAHET Code  
3816 System’. Technical report, Los Alamos National Laboratory report.
- 3817 Prestes, A., N. R. Rigozo, E. Echer, and L. E. A. Vieira: 2006, ‘Spectral analysis of  
3818 sunspot number and geomagnetic indices (1868 2001)’. *Journal of Atmospheric*  
3819 *and Terrestrial Physics* **68**, 182–190.
- 3820 Ramaswamy, V., O. Boucher, J. Haigh, D. Hauglustaine, J. Haywood, G. Myhre, T.  
3821 Nakajima, G. Shi, and S. Solomon: 2001, ‘Radiative Forcing of Climate Change’.  
3822 In: J. Houghton, V. Ding, D. Griggs, M. Noguer, P. van der Linden, X. Dai, K.

- 3823 Maskell, and C. Johnson (eds.): *Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis*. pp.  
3824 340–416, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- 3825 Rampino, M.: 1998, ‘The galactic history of mass extinctions: An update’. *Cel. Mec.*  
3826 **69**, 49–58.
- 3827 Rampino, M., B. Haggerty, and T. Pagano: 1997, ‘A Unified Theory of Impact Crises  
3828 and Mass Extinctions: Quantitative Tests’. *Annals New York Acad. Sci.* **822**,  
3829 403–431.
- 3830 Raspopov, O., V. Dergachev, and T. Kolström: 2004, ‘Periodicity of climate  
3831 conditions and solar variability derived from dendrochronological and other  
3832 palaeoclimatic data in high latitudes’. *Palaeogeogr. Palaeoclim. Palaeoecol.* **209**,  
3833 127–139.
- 3834 Ratkiewicz, R., A. Barnes, G. A. Molvik, J. R. Spreiter, S. S. Stahara, M. Vinokur,  
3835 and S. Venkateswaran: 1998, ‘Effect of varying strength and orientation of local  
3836 interstellar magnetic field on configuration of exterior heliosphere: 3D MHD  
3837 simulations’. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **335**, 363–369.
- 3838 Reames, D. V. and F. B. McDonald: 2003, ‘Wind Observations of Anomalous Cosmic  
3839 Rays from Solar Minimum to Maximum’. *Astrophys. J. Lett.* **586**, L99–L101.
- 3840 Reedy, R. C. and J. Masarik: 1994, ‘Cosmogenic-Nuclide Depth Profiles in the Lunar  
3841 Surface’. In: *Lunar and Planetary Institute Conference Abstracts*. pp. 1119–+.
- 3842 Reinecke, J. P. L., H. Moraal, and F. B. McDonald: 1993, ‘The cosmic radiation in  
3843 the heliosphere at successive solar minima - Steady state no-drift solutions of the  
3844 transport equation’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **98**(17), 9417–9431.
- 3845 Reinecke, J. P. L. and M. S. Potgieter: 1994, ‘An explanation for the difference in  
3846 cosmic ray modulation at low and neutron monitor energies during consecutive  
3847 solar minimum periods’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **99**, 14761–+.
- 3848 Rocha-Pinto, H. J., J. Scaló, W. J. Maciel, and C. Flynn: 2000, ‘Chemical enrichment  
3849 and star formation in the Milky Way disk. II. Star formation history’. *Astron.*  
3850 *& Astrophys.* **358**, 869–885.
- 3851 Rohen, G., C. von Savigny, M. Sinnhuber, E. J. Llewellyn, J. W. Kaiser, C. H.  
3852 Jackman, M.-B. Kallenrode, J. Schröter, K.-U. Eichmann, H. Bovensmann, and  
3853 J. P. Burrows: 2005, ‘Ozone depletion during the solar proton events of Octo-  
3854 ber/November 2003 as seen by SCIAMACHY’. *Journal of Geophysical Research*  
3855 *(Space Physics)* **110**, 9–+.
- 3856 Royer, D. L., R. A. Berner, and D. J. Beerling: 2001, ‘Phanerozoic atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>  
3857 change: evaluating geochemical and paleobiological approaches’. *Earth Science*  
3858 *Reviews* **54**, 349–92.
- 3859 Ruddiman, W.: 2001, *Earth’s Climate: Past and Future*. W.H. Freeman and Co.,  
3860 New York.
- 3861 Ruddiman, W. F.: 2006, ‘Ice-driven CO<sub>2</sub> feedback on ice volume’. *Climate of the*  
3862 *Past Discussions* **2**, 43–78.
- 3863 Ruderman, M. A.: 1974, ‘Possible Consequences of Nearby Supernova Explosions  
3864 for Atmospheric Ozone and Terrestrial Life’. *Science* **184**, 1079–1081.
- 3865 Sabbah, I. and M. Rybanský: 2006, ‘Galactic cosmic ray modulation during the last  
3866 five solar cycles’. *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space Physics)* **111**, 1105–+.
- 3867 Sagan, C. and C. Chyba: 1997, ‘The early faint sun paradox: Organic shielding of  
3868 ultraviolet-labile greenhouse gases’. *Science* **276**, 1217–1221.
- 3869 Scafetta, N. and B. West: 2005, ‘Estimated solar contribution to the global surface  
3870 warming using the ACRIM TSI satellite composite’. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **32**,  
3871 L18713.
- 3872 Scafetta, N. and B. J. West: 2006, ‘Phenomenological solar contribution to the 1900-  
3873 2000 global surface warming’. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **33**, 5708–+.

- 3874 Scalo, J. M.: 1987, 'The initial mass function, starbursts, and the Milky Way'. In:  
3875 *Starbursts and Galaxy Evolution*. pp. 445–465.
- 3876 Schaeffer, O. A., K. Nagel, H. Fechtig, and G. Neukum: 1981, 'Space erosion of  
3877 meteorites and the secular variation of cosmic rays /over 10 to the 9th years/'.  
3878 *Planet. Space Sci.* **29**, 1109–1118.
- 3879 Scherer, K.: 2000, 'Drag forces on interplanetary dust grains induced by the  
3880 interstellar neutral gas'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **105**, 10329–10342.
- 3881 Scherer, K. and H. J. Fahr: 2003, 'Breathing of heliospheric structures triggered by  
3882 the solar-cycle activity'. *Annales Geophysicae* **21**, 1303–1313.
- 3883 Scherer, K., H.-J. Fahr, H. Fichtner, and B. Heber: 2004, 'Long-Term Modulation  
3884 of Cosmic Rays in the Heliosphere and its Influence at Earth'. *Solar Phys.* **224**,  
3885 305–316.
- 3886 Scherer, K. and S. E. S. Ferreira: 2005a, 'A heliospheric hybrid model: hydrodynamic  
3887 plasma flow and kinetic cosmic ray transport'. *Astrophysics and Space Sciences*  
3888 *Transactions* **1**, 17–27.
- 3889 Scherer, K. and S. E. S. Ferreira: 2005b, 'The heliomagnetic and solar-cycle related  
3890 variations of the cosmic ray flux modeled with the BoPo-hybrid code'. *a* **442**,  
3891 L11–L14.
- 3892 Scherer, K. and H. Fichtner: 2004, 'Constraints on the heliospheric magnetic field  
3893 variation during the Maunder Minimum from cosmic ray modulation modelling'.  
3894 *Astron. & Astrophys.* **413**, L11–L14.
- 3895 Scherer, K., H. Fichtner, and O. Stawicki: 2002, 'Shielded by the wind: the influence  
3896 of the interstellar medium on the environment of Earth'. *Journal of Atmospheric*  
3897 *and Terrestrial Physics* **64**, 795–804.
- 3898 Scherer, K., H. Fichtner, O. Stawicki, and H. Fahr: 2001a, 'Cosmogenic element  
3899 production in meteorites the influence of long-term variation in heliospheric  
3900 structure'. In: *International Cosmic Ray Conference*. pp. 4031–+.
- 3901 Scherer, K., E. Marsch, R. Schwenn, and H. Rosenbauer: 2001b, 'Long-term varia-  
3902 tions of the flow direction and angular momentum of the solar wind observed by  
3903 Helios'. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **366**, 331–338.
- 3904 Schopf, J.: 1983, *Earth's Earliest Biosphere: Its Origin and Evolution*. Princeton  
3905 University Press, Princeton, N.J.
- 3906 Schröter, J., B. Heber, M.-B. Kallenrode, and F. Steinhilber: 2005, 'Energetic par-  
3907 ticles in the atmosphere: A Monte-Carlo simulation'. *Adv. Space Res.* **35**, in  
3908 press.
- 3909 Schwartz and James: 1984, 'Periodic mass extinctions and the sun's oscillation about  
3910 the galactic plane'. *Nature* **308**, 712–713.
- 3911 Sedov, L. I.: 1946, 'The motion of air in a strong explosion'. *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR*  
3912 **42**, 17–+.
- 3913 Shalchi, A. and R. Schlickeiser: 2004, 'Quasilinear perpendicular diffusion of cosmic  
3914 rays in weak dynamical turbulence'. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **420**, 821–832.
- 3915 Shapley, H.: 1921, ' '. *J. Geology* **29**, 502–504.
- 3916 Sharma, M.: 2002, 'Variations in solar magnetic activity during the last 200000 years:  
3917 is there a Sun-climate connection?'. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **199**, 459–472.
- 3918 Shaviv, N. and J. Veizer: 2003, 'Celestial driver of Phanerozoic climate? GSA'. *GSA*  
3919 *Today* **13**(7), 4–10.
- 3920 Shaviv, N. J.: 2002, 'Cosmic Ray Diffusion from the Galactic Spiral Arms, Iron  
3921 Meteorites, and a Possible Climatic Connection'. *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **89**(5), 051102–  
3922 +.
- 3923 Shaviv, N. J.: 2003a, 'The spiral structure of the Milky Way, cosmic rays, and ice  
3924 age epochs on Earth'. *New Astronomy* **8**, 39–77.

- 3925 Shaviv, N. J.: 2003b, 'Toward a solution to the early faint Sun paradox: A lower  
3926 cosmic ray flux from a stronger solar wind'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **108**(A12), 3–1.
- 3927 Shaviv, N. J.: 2005, 'On climate response to changes in the cosmic ray flux and  
3928 radiative budget'. *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space Physics)* **110**(A9),  
3929 8105–+.
- 3930 Shea, M. A., D. Smart, and G. A. M. Dreschhoff: 1999, 'Identification of major  
3931 proton fluence events from nitrates in polar ice cores'. *Radiat. Meas.* **30**, 309–316.
- 3932 Shea, M. A. and D. F. Smart: 2004, 'Preliminary study of cosmic rays, geomagnetic  
3933 field changes and possible climate changes'. *Advances in Space Research* **34**,  
3934 420–425.
- 3935 Sherwood, S. C., J. R. Lanzante, and C. L. Meyer: 2005, 'Radiosonde Daytime Biases  
3936 and Late-20th Century Warming'. *Science* **309**, 1556–1559.
- 3937 Shields, G. and J. Veizer: 2002, 'Precambrian marine carbonate isotope database:  
3938 Version 1.1'. *Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems* pp. 1–+.
- 3939 Shindell, D., D. Rind, N. Balachandran, J. Lean, and P. Lonergan: 1999, 'Solar Cycle  
3940 Variability, Ozone, and Climate'. *Science* **284**, 305–+.
- 3941 Siegenthaler, U., T. F. Stocker, E. Monnin, D. Lüthi, J. Schwander, B. Stauffer,  
3942 D. Raynaud, J.-M. Barnola, H. Fischer, V. Masson-Delmotte, and J. Jouzel:  
3943 2005, 'Stable Carbon Cycle-Climate Relationship During the Late Pleistocene'.  
3944 *Science* **310**, 1313–1317.
- 3945 Simpson, J.: 1983, 'Elemental and isotopic composition of the galactic cosmic rays'.  
3946 *Annu. Rev. Nucl. Part. Sci.* **33**, 323–381.
- 3947 Simpson, J. A.: 1951, 'Neutrons Produced in the Atmosphere by the Cosmic  
3948 Radiations'. *Physical Review* **83**, 1175–1188.
- 3949 Simpson, J. A.: 2000, 'The Cosmic Ray Nucleonic Component: The Invention and  
3950 Scientific Uses of the Neutron Monitor - (Keynote Lecture)'. *Space Science*  
3951 *Reviews* **93**, 11–32.
- 3952 Smart, D. F. and M. A. Shea: 1997, 'World Grid of Calculated Cosmic Ray Vertical  
3953 Cutoff Rigidities for Epoch 1990.'. In: *Proc. 25th Int. Cosmic Ray Conf.*, Vol. 2.  
3954 pp. 401–404.
- 3955 Smart, D. F., M. A. Shea, and E. O. Flückiger: 1999a, 'Calculated Vertical Cutoff  
3956 Rigidities for the International Space Station During Magnetically Quiet Times'.  
3957 In: *Proc. 26th Int. Cosmic Ray Conf.*, Vol. 7. pp. 394–397.
- 3958 Smart, D. F., M. A. Shea, and E. O. Flückiger: 2000, 'Magnetospheric Models and  
3959 Trajectory Computations'. *Space Science Reviews* **93**, 305–333.
- 3960 Smart, D. F., M. A. Shea, E. O. Flückiger, A. J. Tylka, and P. R. Boberg: 1999b, 'Cal-  
3961 culated Vertical Cutoff Rigidities for the Int. Space Station During Magnetically  
3962 Active Times'. In: *Proc. 26th Int. Cosmic Ray Conf.*, Vol. 7. pp. 398–401.
- 3963 Smith, E.: 2001, 'The heliospheric current sheet'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **106**.
- 3964 Snowball, I. and P. Sandgren: 2002, 'Geomagnetic field variations in northern Sweden  
3965 during the Holocene quantified from varved lake sediments and their implication  
3966 for cosmogenic nuclide production rates'. *The Holocene* **12**, 517–530.
- 3967 Solanki, S. K., I. G. Usoskin, B. Kromer, M. Schüssler, and J. Beer: 2004, 'Unusual  
3968 activity of the Sun during recent decades compared to the previous 11,000 years'.  
3969 *Nature* **431**, 1084–1087.
- 3970 Solanki, S. K., I. G. Usoskin, B. Kromer, M. Schüssler, and J. Beer: 2005, 'Climate:  
3971 How unusual is today's solar activity? (reply)'. *Nature* **436**, E4–E5.
- 3972 Solomon, S., D. W. Rusch, J. C. Gérard, G. C. Reid, and P. J. Crutzen: 1981, 'The  
3973 effect of particle precipitation events on the neutral and ion chemistry of the  
3974 middle atmosphere: II. Odd hydrogen'. *Planet. Space Sci.* **29**, 885–893.

- 3975 Soon, W. and S. Baliunas: 2003, ‘Proxy climate and environmental changes of the  
3976 past 1,000 years’. *Climate Research* **23**, 89–110.
- 3977 Soon, W. W.-H.: 2005, ‘Variable solar irradiance as a plausible agent for multidecadal  
3978 variations in the Arctic-wide surface air temperature record of the past 130 years’.  
3979 *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **32**, 16712–+.
- 3980 Spahni, R., J. Chappellaz, T. F. Stocker, L. Loulergue, G. Hausammann, K. Kawamura,  
3981 J. Flückiger, J. Schwander, D. Raynaud, V. Masson-Delmotte, and J.  
3982 Jouzel: 2005, ‘Atmospheric Methane and Nitrous Oxide of the Late Pleistocene  
3983 from Antarctic Ice Cores’. *Science* **310**, 1317–1321.
- 3984 Sreenivasan, S. R. and H. Fichtner: 2001, ‘ACR modulation inside a non-spherical  
3985 modulation boundary’. In: *The Outer Heliosphere: The Next Frontiers*. pp. 207–  
3986 +.
- 3987 St-Onge, G., J. S. Stoner, and C. Hillaire-Marcel: 2003, ‘Holocene paleomagnetic  
3988 records from the St. Lawrence Estuary, eastern Canada: centennial- to millennial-  
3989 scale geomagnetic modulation of cosmogenic isotopes’. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.*  
3990 **209**, 113–130.
- 3991 Stanev, T.: 2004, *High energy cosmic rays*, Springer-Praxis books in astrophysics  
3992 and astronomy. Springer.
- 3993 Stocker, T., G. K. C. Clarke, H. Le Treut, R. S. Lindzen, V. P. Meleshko, R. K.  
3994 Mugara, T. N. Palmer, R. T. Pierrehumbert, P. J. Sellers, K. E. Trenberth, and  
3995 J. Willebrand: 2001, ‘Physical climate processes and feedbacks’. In: J. T. H.  
3996 et al. (ed.): *Climate Change 2001: The Scientific Basis. Contribution of Working  
3997 Group I to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on  
3998 Climate Change*. pp. 419–470, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
- 3999 Stone, E. C., A. C. Cummings, F. B. McDonald, B. C. Heikkila, N. Lal, and  
4000 W. R. Webber: 2005, ‘Voyager 1 Explores the Termination Shock Region and  
4001 the Heliosheath Beyond’. *Science* **309**, 2017–2020.
- 4002 Störmer, C.: 1950, *The Polar Aurora*. Oxford University Press, London.
- 4003 Strong, A. W., I. V. Moskalenko, and O. Reimer: 2000, ‘Diffuse Continuum Gamma  
4004 Rays from the Galaxy’. *Astrophys. J.* **537**, 763–784.
- 4005 Stuiver, M., T. Braziunas, P. Grootes, and G. Zielinski: 1997, ‘Is There Evidence  
4006 for Solar Forcing of Climate in the GISP2 Oxygen Isotope Record?’. *Quatern.  
4007 Res.* **48**, 259–266.
- 4008 Sun, B. and R. S. Bradley: 2002, ‘Solar influences on cosmic rays and cloud for-  
4009 mation: A reassessment’. *Journal of Geophysical Research (Atmospheres)* **107**,  
4010 5–1.
- 4011 Sun, B. and R. S. Bradley: 2004, ‘Reply to comment by N. D. Marsh and H. Svens-  
4012 mark on “Solar influences on cosmic rays and cloud formation: A reassessment”’.  
4013 *Journal of Geophysical Research (Atmospheres)* **109**, 14206–+.
- 4014 Svensmark, H.: 1998, ‘Influence of Cosmic Rays on Earth’s Climate’. *Phys. Rev.  
4015 Lett.* **81**, 5027–5030.
- 4016 Svensmark, H. and E. Friis-Christensen: 1997, ‘Variation of cosmic ray flux and  
4017 global cloud coverage—a missing link in solar-climate relationships’. *Journal of  
4018 Atmospheric and Terrestrial Physics* **59**, 1225–1232.
- 4019 Tauxe, L.: 1993, ‘Sedimentary records of relative paleointensity of the geomagnetic  
4020 field: Theory and practice’. *Rev. Geophys.* **31**, 319–354.
- 4021 Taylor, J. H. and J. M. Cordes: 1993, ‘Pulsar distances and the galactic distribution  
4022 of free electrons’. *Astrophys. J.* **411**, 674–684.
- 4023 Thorsett, S. E.: 1995, ‘Terrestrial implications of cosmological gamma-ray burst  
4024 models’. *Astrophys. J. Lett.* **444**, L53–L55.

- 4025 Tinsley, B. and F. Yu: 2004, ‘Atmospheric ionization and clouds as links between  
4026 solar activity and climate’. *Geophys. Monogr.* **141**, 321–340.
- 4027 Tinsley, B. A. and G. W. Deen: 1991, ‘Apparent tropospheric response to MeV-GeV  
4028 particle flux variations: A connection via electrofreezing of supercooled water in  
4029 high-level clouds?’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **96**, 22283–22296.
- 4030 Tinsley, B. A. and R. A. Heelis: 1993, ‘Correlations of atmospheric dynamics with  
4031 solar activity evidence for a connection via the solar wind, atmospheric electricity,  
4032 and cloud microphysics.’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **98**, 10375–10384.
- 4033 Troshichev, O. A., L. V. Egorova, and V. Y. Vovk: 2003, ‘Evidence for influence  
4034 of the solar wind variations on atmospheric temperature in the southern polar  
4035 region’. *Journal of Atmospheric and Terrestrial Physics* **65**, 947–956.
- 4036 Tsyganenko, N. A.: 1989, ‘A magnetospheric magnetic field model with a warped  
4037 tail current sheet’. *Planet. Space Sci.* **37**, 5–20.
- 4038 Tsyganenko, N. A.: 1995, ‘Modeling the Earth’s magnetospheric magnetic field  
4039 confined within a realistic magnetopause’. *J. Geophys. Res.* **100**, 5599–5612.
- 4040 Tsyganenko, N. A.: 1996, ‘Effects of the solar wind conditions in the global magne-  
4041 toospheric configurations as deduced from data-based field models (Invited)’. In:  
4042 *ESA SP-389: International Conference on Substorms*. pp. 181–+.
- 4043 Tsyganenko, N. A.: 2002, ‘A model of the near magnetosphere with a dawn-  
4044 dusk asymmetry 2. Parameterization and fitting to observations’. *Journal of*  
4045 *Geophysical Research (Space Physics)* **107**(A8), 10–1.
- 4046 Tsyganenko, N. A., H. J. Singer, and J. C. Kasper: 2003, ‘Storm-time distortion  
4047 of the inner magnetosphere: How severe can it get?’. *Journal of Geophysical*  
4048 *Research (Space Physics)* **108**(A5), 18–1.
- 4049 Tsyganenko, N. A. and M. I. Sitnov: 2005, ‘Modeling the dynamics of the inner mag-  
4050 netosphere during strong geomagnetic storms’. *Journal of Geophysical Research*  
4051 *(Space Physics)* **110**(A9), 3208–+.
- 4052 Usoskin, I. G., O. G. Gladysheva, and G. A. Kovaltsov: 2004a, ‘Cosmic ray-induced  
4053 ionization in the atmosphere: spatial and temporal changes’. *J. Atmos. Terr.*  
4054 *Phys.* **66**, 1791–1796.
- 4055 Usoskin, I. G., N. Marsh, G. A. Kovaltsov, K. Mursula, and O. G. Gladysheva: 2004b,  
4056 ‘Latitudinal dependence of low cloud amount on cosmic ray induced ionization’.  
4057 *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **31**, 6109.
- 4058 Usoskin, I. G., N. Marsh, G. A. Kovaltsov, K. Mursula, and O. G. Gladysheva: 2004c,  
4059 ‘Latitudinal dependence of low cloud amount on cosmic ray induced ionization’.  
4060 *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **31**, 16109–+.
- 4061 Usoskin, I. G. and K. Mursula: 2003, ‘Long-Term Solar Cycle Evolution: Review of  
4062 Recent Developments’. *Solar Phys.* **218**, 319–343.
- 4063 Vakulenko, N., V. Kotlyakov, A. Monnin, and D. Sonechkin: 2004, ‘Evidence for the  
4064 leading role of temperature variations relative to greenhouse gas concentration  
4065 variations in the Vostok ice core record’. *Dokl. Russian Acad. Sci., Earth Sciences*  
4066 **397**, 663–667.
- 4067 Valet, J.-P., L. Meynadier, and Y. Guyodo: 2005, ‘Geomagnetic dipole strength and  
4068 reversal rate over the past two million years’. *Nature* **435**, 802–805.
- 4069 van Geel, B., O. Raspopov, H. Renssen, J. van der Plicht, V. Dergachev, and H.  
4070 Meijer: 1999a, ‘The role of solar forcing upon climate change’. *Quarterly Sci.*  
4071 *Rev.* **18**, 331–338.
- 4072 van Geel, B., O. Raspopov, H. Renssen, J. van der Plicht, V. Dergachev, and H.  
4073 Meijer: 1999b, ‘The role of solar forcing upon climate change’. *Quat. Sci. Rev.*  
4074 **18**, 331–338.



- 4075 van Geel, B., J. van der Plicht, M. Kilian, E. Klaver, J. Kouwenberg, H. Renssen, J.  
 4076 Reynaud–Farrera, and H. Waterbolk: 1998, ‘The sharp rise of  $\Delta^{14}\text{C}$  ca. 800 cal  
 4077 BC: Possible causes, related climatic teleconnections and the impact on human  
 4078 environment.’ In: J. v. d. P. W.G. Mook (ed.): *Proc. 16<sup>th</sup> Intern.  $^{14}\text{C}$  Conference*,  
 4079 Vol. 40. pp. 535–550, Radiocarbon.
- 4080 van Loon, H., G. A. Meehl, and J. M. Arblaster: 2004, ‘A decadal solar effect in  
 4081 the tropics in July–August’. *Journal of Atmospheric and Terrestrial Physics* **66**,  
 4082 1767–1778.
- 4083 Veizer, J.: 2005, ‘Celestial climate driver: a perspective from four billion years of the  
 4084 carbon cycle’. *Geoscience Canada* **32**, 13–28.
- 4085 Veizer, J. and et al.: 1999, ‘ $^{87}\text{Sr}/^{86}\text{Sr}$ ,  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  and  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  evolution of Phanerozoic  
 4086 seawater’. *Chem. Geol.* **161**, 59–88.
- 4087 Veizer, J., Y. Godderis, and L. M. François: 2000, ‘Evidence for decoupling of at-  
 4088 mospheric  $\text{CO}_2$  and global climate during the Phanerozoic eon’. *Nature* **408**,  
 4089 698–701.
- 4090 Veizer, J. and F. Mackenzie: 2004, ‘Evolution of Sedimentary Rocks’. In: H. Holland  
 4091 and K. Turekian (eds.): *Treatise on Geochemistry*, Vol. 7. pp. 369–407, Elsevier.
- 4092 Velinov, P. I. Y., M. B. Buchvarova, L. Mateev, and H. Ruder: 2001, ‘Determination  
 4093 of electron production rates caused by cosmic ray particles in ionospheres of  
 4094 terrestrial planets’. *Advances in Space Research* **27**, 1901–1908.
- 4095 Veretenenko, S. V., V. A. Dergachev, and P. B. Dmitriyev: 2005, ‘Long-term varia-  
 4096 tions of the surface pressure in the North Atlantic and possible association with  
 4097 solar activity and galactic cosmic rays’. *Adv. Space Res.* **35**, 484–90.
- 4098 Verschuren, D., K. Laird, and B. Cumming: 2000, ‘Rainfall and drought in equatorial  
 4099 east Africa during the past 1,100 years’. *Nature* **403**, 410–414.
- 4100 Viau, A., K. Gajewski, P. Fines, D. Atkinson, and M. Sawada: 2002, ‘Widespread  
 4101 evidence of 1500 yr climate variability in North America during the past 14000  
 4102 yr’. *Geology* **30**, 455–458.
- 4103 Vogt, S., G. F. Herzog, and R. C. Reedy: 1990, ‘Cosmogenic nuclides in extraterres-  
 4104 trial materials’. *Reviews of Geophysics* **28**, 253–275.
- 4105 von Storch, H., E. Zorita, J. Jones, Y. Dimitriev, F. González-Rouco, and S. Tett:  
 4106 2004, ‘Reconstructing Past Climate from Noisy Data’. *Science* **306**, 679–682.
- 4107 Wagner, G., J. Masarik, J. Beer, S. Baumgartner, D. Imboden, P. W. Kubik, H.-A.  
 4108 Synal, and M. Suter: 2000, ‘econstruction of the Geomagnetic Field Between 20  
 4109 and 60 kyr BP from Cosmogeni c Radionuclides in the GRIP Ice Core.’. *Nuclear*  
 4110 *Instruments and Methods in Physics Research B* **172**, 597.
- 4111 Wang, Y., H. Cheng, R. L. Edwards, Z. S. An, J. Y. Wu, C.-C. Shen, and J. A.  
 4112 Dorale: 2001, ‘A High-Resolution Absolute-Dated Late Pleistocene Monsoon  
 4113 Record from Hulu Cave, China’. *Science* **294**, 2345–2348.
- 4114 Wang, Y., H. Cheng, R. L. Edwards, Y. He, X. Kong, Z. An, J. Wu, M. Kelly, C.  
 4115 Dykoski, and X. Li: 2005, ‘The Holocene Asian Monsoon: Links to Solar Changes  
 4116 and North Atlantic Climate’. *Science* **308**, 854–857.
- 4117 Warren, S. E.: 1999, *Antarctic Encyclopedia of Climate and Weather*, pp. 32–39. OUP,  
 4118 New York.
- 4119 Washimi, H., T. Tanaka, and G. P. Zank: 2005, ‘A Global V-Shaped Channel  
 4120 Structure of the Termination Shock Due to a Magnetic Pressure Effect, and Its  
 4121 Physical Connection to Bipolar Flow Type Planetary Nebulae’. In: *AIP Conf.*  
 4122 *Proc. 781: The Physics of Collisionless Shocks: 4th Annual IGPP International*  
 4123 *Astrophysics Conference*. pp. 289–293.
- 4124 Waters, L. S. E.: 1999, ‘MCNPX User’s Manual–Version 2.1.5’. Technical report,  
 4125 Los Alamos Natl. Lab.

- 4126 Webber, W. R. and P. R. Higbie: 2003, 'Production of cosmogenic Be nuclei in the  
4127 Earth's atmosphere by cosmic rays: Its dependence on solar modulation and  
4128 the interstellar cosmic ray spectrum'. *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space  
4129 Physics)* **108**, 2–1.
- 4130 Webber, W. R. and J. A. Lockwood: 2001, 'Voyager and Pioneer spacecraft measure-  
4131 ments of cosmic ray intensities in the outer heliosphere: Toward a new paradigm  
4132 for understanding the global modulation process: 2. Maximum solar modulation  
4133 (1990-1991)'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **106**, 29333–29340.
- 4134 Webber, W. R. and J. A. Lockwood: 2004, 'Onset and amplitude of the 11-year  
4135 solar modulation of cosmic ray intensities at the Earth and at Voyagers 1 and 2  
4136 during the period from 1997 to 2003'. *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space  
4137 Physics)* **109**, 9103–+.
- 4138 Webber, W. R. and A. Soutoul: 1998, 'A Study of the Surviving Fraction of the  
4139 Cosmic-Ray Radioactive Decay Isotopes  $^{10}\text{Be}$ ,  $^{26}\text{Al}$ ,  $^{36}\text{Cl}$  and  $^{54}\text{Mn}$  as a Function  
4140 of Energy Using the Charge Ratios Be/B, Al/Mg, Cl/Ar, and Mn/Fe Measured  
4141 on HEAO3'. *Astrophys. J.* **506**, 335–340.
- 4142 Weng, H.: 2005, 'The influence of the 11 yr solar cycle on the interannual–centennial  
4143 climate variability'. *J. Atm. Solar-Terrest. Phys.* **67**, 793–805.
- 4144 Whang, Y. C., L. F. Burlaga, Y.-M. Wang, and N. R. Sheeley: 2004, 'The termination  
4145 shock near 35° latitude'. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **31**, 3805–+.
- 4146 Wibberenz, G., I. G. Richardson, and H. V. Cane: 2002, 'A simple concept for  
4147 modeling cosmic ray modulation in the inner heliosphere during solar cycles  
4148 20-23'. *Journal of Geophysical Research (Space Physics)* pp. 5–1.
- 4149 Wielen, R.: 1977, 'The diffusion of stellar orbits derived from the observed age-depen-  
4150 dence of the velocity dispersion'. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **60**, 263–275.
- 4151 Wild, M., H. Gilgen, A. Roesch, A. Ohmura, C. N. Long, E. G. Dutton, B. Forgan,  
4152 A. Kallis, V. Russak, and A. Tsvetkov: 2005, 'From Dimming to Brightening:  
4153 Decadal Changes in Solar Radiation at Earth's Surface'. *Science* **308**, 847–850.
- 4154 Wiles, G. C., R. D. D'Arrigo, R. Villalba, P. E. Calkin, and D. J. Barclay: 2004,  
4155 'Century-scale solar variability and Alaskan temperature change over the past  
4156 millennium'. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* **31**, 15203–+.
- 4157 Willard, D., C. Berhardt, D. Korejwo, and S. Meyers: 2005, 'Impact of millennial-  
4158 scale Holocene climate variability on eastern North American terrestrial ecosys-  
4159 tems: pollen-based climatic reconstruction'. *Global Planet. Change* **47**, 17–35.
- 4160 Windley, B.: 1984, *The Evolving Continents*. Wiley Press, New York.
- 4161 Wolfendale, A. W.: 1973, *Cosmic rays at ground level*. London: Institute of Physics.
- 4162 Worm, H.-U.: 1997, 'A link between geomagnetic reversals and events and glacia-  
4163 tions'. *Earth Planet. Sci. Lett.* **147**, 55–67.
- 4164 Xu, H., Y. Hong, Q. Lin, Y. Zhu, B. Hong, and H. Jiang: 2006, 'Temperature  
4165 responses to quasi-100-yr solar variability during the past 6000 years based  
4166 on  $\delta^{18}\text{O}$  of peat cellulose in Hongyuan, eastern Qinghai-Tibet plateau, China'.  
4167 *Palaeogeogr. Palaeoclim. Palaeoecol.* **230**, 155–164.
- 4168 Yabushita, S. and J. Allen: 1998, 'On the impact vs GMC model of the K/T  
4169 boundary event'. *Astronomy and Geophysics* **39**, 28–+.
- 4170 Yang, S., H. Odah, and J. Shaw: 2000, 'Variations in the geomagnetic dipole moment  
4171 over the last 12000 years'. *Geophysical Journal International* **140**, 158–162.
- 4172 Yeghikyan, A. and H. Fahr: 2004a, 'Effects induced by the passage of the Sun through  
4173 dense molecular clouds. I. Flow outside of the compressed heliosphere'. *Astron.  
4174 & Astrophys.* **415**, 763–770.

- 4175 Yeghikyan, A. and H. Fahr: 2004b, 'Terrestrial atmospheric effects induced by  
4176 counterstreaming dense interstellar cloud material'. *Astron. & Astrophys.* **425**,  
4177 1113–1118.
- 4178 Yeghikyan, A. G. and H. J. Fahr: 2003, 'Consequences of the Solar System passage  
4179 through dense interstellar clouds'. *Annales Geophysicae* **21**, 1263–1273.
- 4180 Young, G., V. von Brunn, D. Gold, and W. Minter: 1998, 'Earth's Oldest Reported  
4181 Glaciation: Physical and Chemical Evidence from the Archean Mozaan Group  
4182 ( $\approx 2.9$  Ga) of South Africa'. *J. Geol.* **106**, 523–538.
- 4183 Yu, F.: 2002, 'Altitude variations of cosmic ray induced production of aerosols:  
4184 Implications for global cloudiness and climate'. *J. Geophys. Res.* **248**, 248.
- 4185 Zank, G. P.: 1999, 'Interaction of the solar wind with the local interstellar medium:  
4186 a theoretical perspective'. *Space Science Reviews* **89**, 413–688.
- 4187 Zank, G. P. and P. C. Frisch: 1999, 'Consequences of a Change in the Galactic  
4188 Environment of the Sun'. *Astrophys. J.* **518**, 965–973.
- 4189 Zank, G. P. and H.-R. Müller: 2003, 'The dynamical heliosphere'. *Journal of*  
4190 *Geophysical Research (Space Physics)* pp. 7–1.
- 4191 Zuccon, P.: 2002, 'A Monte Carlo Simulation of the Cosmic Rays Interactions with  
4192 the Earth's Atmosphere'. *Internat. J. Mod. Phys. A*, **17**, 1625–1634.